Pioneer

Operating Instructions

VSX-1021-K
VSX-921-K

audio/video multi-channel receiver

IMPORTANT

The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.

CAUTION
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK DO NOT OPEN

CAUTION:
TO PREVENT THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

D3-4-2-1-1_A1_En

WARNING

This equipment is not waterproof. To prevent a fire or shock hazard, do not place any container filled with liquid near this equipment (such as a vase or flower pot) or expose it to dripping, splashing, rain or moisture.

D3-4-2-1-3_A1_En

WARNING

Before plugging in for the first time, read the following section carefully.

The voltage of the available power supply differs according to country or region. Be sure that the power supply voltage of the area where this unit will be used meets the required voltage (e.g., 230 V or 120 V) written on the rear panel.

D3-4-2-1-4*_A1_En

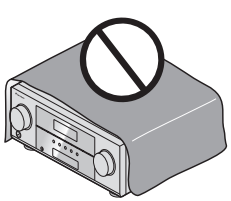
VENTILATION CAUTION

When installing this unit, make sure to leave space around the unit for ventilation to improve heat radiation (at least 40 cm at top, 10 cm at rear, and 20 cm at each side).

WARNING

Slots and openings in the cabinet are provided for ventilation to ensure reliable operation of the product, and to protect it from overheating. To prevent fire hazard, the openings should never be blocked or covered with items (such as newspapers, table-cloths, curtains) or by operating the equipment on thick carpet or a bed.

D3-4-2-1-7b*_A1_En



Operating Environment

Operating environment temperature and humidity: +5 °C to +35 °C (+41 °F to +95 °F); less than 85 %RH (cooling vents not blocked)
Do not install this unit in a poorly ventilated area, or in locations exposed to high humidity or direct sunlight (or strong artificial light)

D3-4-2-1-7c*_A1_En

WARNING

To prevent a fire hazard, do not place any naked flame sources (such as a lighted candle) on the equipment.

D3-4-2-1-7a_A1_En

If the AC plug of this unit does not match the AC outlet you want to use, the plug must be removed and appropriate one fitted. Replacement and mounting of an AC plug on the power supply cord of this unit should be performed only by qualified service personnel. If connected to an AC outlet, the cut-off plug can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure it is properly disposed of after removal.
The equipment should be disconnected by removing the mains plug from the wall socket when left unused for a long period of time (for example, when on vacation).

D3-4-2-2-1a_A1_En

CAUTION

The ⏻ **STANDBY/ON** switch on this unit will not completely shut off all power from the AC outlet. Since the power cord serves as the main disconnect device for the unit, you will need to unplug it from the AC outlet to shut down all power. Therefore, make sure the unit has been installed so that the power cord can be easily unplugged from the AC outlet in case of an accident. To avoid fire hazard, the power cord should also be unplugged from the AC outlet when left unused for a long period of time (for example, when on vacation).

D3-4-2-2-2a*_A1_En

Replacement and mounting of an AC plug on the power supply cord of this unit should be performed only by qualified service personnel.

IMPORTANT: THE MOULDED PLUG

This appliance is supplied with a moulded three pin mains plug for your safety and convenience. A 10 amp fuse is fitted in this plug. Should the fuse need to be replaced, please ensure that the replacement fuse has a rating of 10 amps and that it is approved by ASTA or BSI to BS1362.

Check for the ASTA mark ⓐ or the BSI mark ⓑ on the body of the fuse.

If the plug contains a removable fuse cover, you must ensure that it is refitted when the fuse is replaced. If you lose the fuse cover the plug must not be used until a replacement cover is obtained. A replacement fuse cover can be obtained from your local dealer.

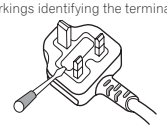
If the fitted moulded plug is unsuitable for your socket outlet, then the fuse shall be removed and the plug cut off and disposed of safely. There is a danger of severe electrical shock if the cut off plug is inserted into any 13 amp socket.

If a new plug is to be fitted, please observe the wiring code as shown below. If in any doubt, please consult a qualified electrician.

IMPORTANT: The wires in this mains lead are coloured in accordance with the following code:
Blue : Neutral Brown : Live
As the colours of the wires in the mains lead of this appliance may not correspond with the coloured markings identifying the terminals in your plug, proceed as follows;

The wire which is coloured BLUE must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter **N** or coloured BLACK.
The wire which is coloured BROWN must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter **L** or coloured RED.

How to replace the fuse: Open the fuse compartment with a screwdriver and replace the fuse.



D3-4-2-1-2-2*_A2_En

Information for users on collection and disposal of old equipment and used batteries

(Symbol for equipment)

(Symbol examples for batteries)

Pb

These symbols on the products, packaging, and/or accompanying documents mean that used electrical and electronic products and batteries should not be mixed with general household waste.

For proper treatment, recovery and recycling of old products and used batteries, please take them to applicable collection points in accordance with your national legislation.

By disposing of these products and batteries correctly, you will help to save valuable resources and prevent any potential negative effects on human health and the environment which could otherwise arise from inappropriate waste handling.

For more information about collection and recycling of old products and batteries, please contact your local municipality, your waste disposal service or the point of sale where you purchased the items.

These symbols are only valid in the European Union.

For countries outside the European Union:

If you wish to discard these items, please contact your local authorities or dealer and ask for the correct method of disposal.

K058a_A1_En

This product is for general household purposes. Any failure due to use for other than household purposes (such as long-term use for business purposes in a restaurant or use in a car or ship) and which requires repair will be charged for even during the warranty period.

K041_A1_En

Thank you for buying this Pioneer product. Please read through these operating instructions so you will know how to operate your model properly. After you have finished reading the instructions, put them away in a safe place for future reference.

Contents

01 Before you start

Checking what's in the box ... 5
Installing the receiver ... 5
Loading the batteries ... 5
Operating range of remote control unit ... 5
Canceling the demo display ... 5
About operation of the receiver with a mobile terminal (iPod, iPhone, etc.) ... 5
About using AVNavigator (included CD-ROM) ... 5

02 Controls and displays

Remote control ... 7
Display ... 8
Front panel ... 9

03 Connecting your equipment

Connecting your equipment ... 10
Rear panel ... 10
Determining the speakers' application ... 11
Placing the speakers ... 12
Connecting the speakers ... 12
Installing your speaker system ... 13
Selecting the Speaker system ... 14
About the audio connection ... 14
About the video converter ... 14
About HDMI ... 15
Connecting your TV and playback components ... 16
Connecting an HDD/DVD recorder, BD recorder and other video sources ... 17
Connecting a satellite/cable receiver or other set-top box ... 18
Connecting other audio components ... 18
Connecting AM/FM antennas ... 19
MULTI-ZONE setup ... 19
Connecting to the network through LAN interface ... 20
Connecting optional *Bluetooth* ADAPTER ... 20
Connecting an iPod ... 20
Connecting a USB device ... 21
Connecting an HDMI-equipped component to the front panel input ... 21
Connecting to the front panel video terminal ... 21
Connecting to a wireless LAN ... 21
Connecting an IR receiver ... 21
Operating other Pioneer components with this unit's sensor ... 22
Plugging in the receiver ... 22

04 Basic Setup

Changing the OSD display language (OSD Language) ... 23
Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC) ... 23
The Input Setup menu ... 24
Operation Mode Setup ... 25

05 Basic playback

Playing a source ... 27
Playing an iPod ... 27
Playing a USB device ... 28
Listening to the radio ... 30
Bluetooth ADAPTER for Wireless Enjoyment of Music ... 31

06 Listening to your system

Auto playback ... 33
Listening in surround sound ... 33
Using Stream Direct ... 34
Selecting MCACC presets ... 34
Choosing the input signal ... 34
Better sound using Phase Control ... 34

07 Playback with HOME MEDIA GALLERY inputs

Enjoying the Home Media Gallery ... 36
Features of Home Media Gallery ... 36
Introduction ... 36
Playback with Home Media Gallery ... 37
Advanced operations for Internet radio ... 38
About network playback ... 38
About playable file formats ... 39

08 Control with HDMI function

About the Control with HDMI function ... 41
Making Control with HDMI connections ... 41
HDMI Setup ... 41
Before using synchronization ... 42
About synchronized operations ... 42
Setting the PQLS function ... 42
Cautions on the Control with HDMI function ... 43

09 Using other functions

Setting the Audio options ... 44
Setting the Video options ... 46
Switching the speaker terminals ... 47
Using the MULTI-ZONE controls ... 47
Making an audio or a video recording ... 48
Reducing the level of an analog signal ... 48
Using the sleep timer ... 48
Dimming the display ... 48
Checking your system settings ... 48
Resetting the system ... 48

10 Controlling the rest of your system

About the Remote Setup menu ... 50
Operating multiple receivers ... 50
Setting the remote to control other components ... 50
Selecting preset codes directly ... 50
Programming signals from other remote controls ... 51
Erasing one of the remote control button settings ... 51
Erasing all learnt settings that are in one input function ... 51
Direct function ... 51
Multi Operation and System Off ... 52
Resetting the remote control settings ... 53
Controlling components ... 54

11 The Advanced MCACC menu

Making receiver settings from the Advanced MCACC menu ... 56
Automatic MCACC (Expert) ... 56
Manual MCACC setup ... 58
Checking MCACC Data ... 60
Data Management ... 61

12 The System Setup and Other Setup menus

Making receiver settings from the System Setup menu ... 62
Manual speaker setup ... 62
Network Setup menu ... 64
Checking the Network Information ... 65
The Other Setup menu ... 66

13 Additional information

Troubleshooting 1 ... 68
Troubleshooting 2 ... 74
Troubleshooting of wireless LAN ... 76
About status messages ... 77
Important information regarding the HDMI connection ... 78
Cleaning the unit ... 78
Surround sound formats ... 78
About iPod ... 78
About FLAC ... 79
Auto Surround, ALC and Stream Direct with different input signal formats ... 79
Glossary ... 80
Features index ... 83
Specifications ... 84
Preset code list ... 85

Flow of settings on the receiver

Flow for connecting and setting the receiver

The unit is a full-fledged AV receiver equipped with an abundance of functions and terminals. It can be used easily after following the procedure below to make the connections and settings.
Required setting item: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, **7**, **9**
Setting to be made as necessary: **6**, **8**, **10**, **11**, **12**

Important
The receiver's initial settings can be made on the computer using **Wiring Navi** on the AVNavigator CD-ROM included with the receiver. In this case, virtually the same connections and settings as in steps **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, **6**, **7** and **8** can be made interactively. For instructions on using AVNavigator, see *About using AVNavigator (included CD-ROM)* on page 5 .

1 Before you start
- *Checking what's in the box* on page 5
- *Loading the batteries* on page 5

⬇

2 Determining the speakers' application (page 11)
- 7.1 channel surround system (Front height)
- 7.1 channel surround system (Front wide)
- 7.1 channel surround system & Speaker B connection
- 5.1 channel surround system & Front Bi-amping connection (High quality surround)
- 5.1 channel surround system & ZONE 2 connection (Multi Zone)

⬇

3 Connecting the speakers
- *Placing the speakers* on page 12
- *Connecting the speakers* on page 12
- *Installing your speaker system* on page 13
- *Bi-amping your speakers* on page 13

⬇

4 Connecting the components
- *About the audio connection* on page 14
- *About the video converter* on page 14
- *Connecting your TV and playback components* on page 16
- *Connecting AM/FM antennas* on page 19
- *Plugging in the receiver* on page 22

⬇

5 Power On

⬇

6 Changing the OSD display language (OSD Language) (page 23)

⬇

7 MCACC speaker settings
- *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23

⬇

8 The Input Setup menu (page 24)
(When using connections other than the recommended connections)

⬇

9 Basic playback (page 27)

⬇

10 Adjusting the sound and picture quality as desired
- Using the various listening modes (page 33)
- Better sound using Phase Control (page 34)
- Measuring the all EQ type (SYMMETRY/ALL CH ADJ/FRONT ALIGN) (page 56)
- Changing the channel level while listening (page 63)
- Switching on/off the Acoustic Calibration EQ, Auto Sound Retriever or Dialog Enhancement (page 44)
- Setting the PQLS function (page 42)
- Setting the Audio options (page 44)
- Setting the Video options (page 46)

⬇

11 Other optional adjustments and settings
- Control with HDMI function (page 41)
- The Advanced MCACC menu (page 56)
- The System Setup and Other Setup menus (page 62)

⬇

12 Making maximum use of the remote control
- Operating multiple receivers (page 50)
- Setting the remote to control other components (page 50)

Before you start

Checking what's in the box

Please check that you've received the following supplied accessories:

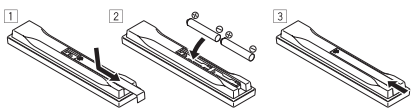
- Setup microphone (cable: 5 m)
- Remote control unit
- AAA size IEC R03 dry cell batteries (to confirm system operation) x2
- AM loop antenna
- FM wire antenna
- iPod cable
- Power cord
- Warranty card
- CD-ROM (AVNavigator)
- Quick start guide

Installing the receiver

- When installing this unit, make sure to put it on a level and stable surface.
- Don't install it on the following places:
  - on a color TV (the screen may distort)
  - near a cassette deck (or close to a device that gives off a magnetic field). This may interfere with the sound.
  - in direct sunlight
  - in damp or wet areas
  - in extremely hot or cold areas
  - in places where there is vibration or other movement
  - in places that are very dusty
  - in places that have hot fumes or oils (such as a kitchen)
- Do not touch this receiver's bottom panel while the power is on or just after it is turned off. The bottom panel becomes hot when the power is on (or right after it is turned off) and could cause burns.

Loading the batteries

The batteries included with the unit are to check initial operations; they may not last over a long period. We recommend using alkaline batteries that have a longer life.



WARNING

- Do not use or store batteries in direct sunlight or other excessively hot place, such as inside a car or near a heater. This can cause batteries to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. It can also reduce the life or performance of batteries.

CAUTION

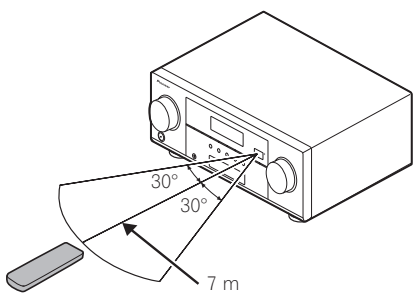
Incorrect use of batteries may result in such hazards as leakage and bursting. Observe the following precautions:

- Never use new and old batteries together.
- Insert the plus and minus sides of the batteries properly according to the marks in the battery case.
- Batteries with the same shape may have different voltages. Do not use different batteries together.
- When disposing of used batteries, please comply with governmental regulations or environmental public instruction's rules that apply in your country or area.

Operating range of remote control unit

The remote control may not work properly if:

- There are obstacles between the remote control and the receiver's remote sensor.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light is shining onto the remote sensor.
- The receiver is located near a device that is emitting infrared rays.
- The receiver is operated simultaneously with another infrared remote control unit.



Canceling the demo display

On this receiver, the demo mode is turned on by default. When the power is turned on, the demo display is set and various indications are shown on the front panel display. To cancel the demo display, connect the power cord, then perform the operation below.

- The demo mode is canceled automatically when the **Full Auto MCACC** operation is performed.

1 Switch the receiver into standby.

2 While holding down ENTER on the front panel, press ⏻ STANDBY/ON.

The display shows **RESET ◄ NO ►**.

3 Select 'FL DEMO' using TUNE ↑/↓.

4 Use PRESET ←/→ to select FL DEMO ◄ OFF ► then press ⏻ STANDBY/ON on the front panel.

About operation of the receiver with a mobile terminal (iPod, iPhone, etc.)

The receiver can be controlled from the mobile terminal by installing a special application on the mobile terminal. For details, see the product information on the Pioneer website.
This special application may be changed or discontinued without notice.

About using AVNavigator (included CD-ROM)

The included AVNavigator CD-ROM contains **Wiring Navi** allowing you to easily make the receiver's connections and initial settings in dialog fashion. High precision initial settings can be completed easily simply by following the instructions on the screen to make the connections and settings.
There are also other features enabling easy use of various functions, including an Interactive Manual that operates in association with the receiver, updating of various types of software, and MCACC Application that lets you check the MCACC measurement results on 3D graphs.

Installing AVNavigator

1 Load the included AVNavigator CD-ROM into your computer's CD drive.

- The installation screen is displayed. Proceed to step 2.

- If the installation screen does not appear, double-click on the CD-ROM icon then start the installer (AVNV_XXX_xxx.exe).

2 Follow the instructions on the screen to install.

When "Finish" is selected, installation is completed.

3 Remove the included AVNavigator CD-ROM from the computer's CD drive.

Handling the CD-ROM

Operating Environment

- This CD-ROM can be used with Microsoft® Windows® XP/Vista/7.
- A browser is at times used for AVNavigator functions. The supported browser is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6, 7 and 8. With other browsers, some functions may be limited or the display may not appear properly.

Precautions For Use

- This CD-ROM is for use with a personal computer. It cannot be used with a DVD player or music CD player. Attempting to play this CD-ROM with a DVD player or music CD player can damage speakers or cause impaired hearing due to the large volume.

License

- Please agree to the "Terms of Use" indicated below before using this CD-ROM. Do not use if you are unwilling to consent to the terms of its use.

Terms of Use

- Copyright to data provided on this CD-ROM belongs to PIONEER CORPORATION. Unauthorized transfer, duplication, broadcast, public transmission, translation, sales, lending or other such matters that go beyond the scope of "personal use" or "citation" as defined by Copyright Law may be subject to punitive actions. Permission to use this CD-ROM is granted under license by PIONEER CORPORATION.

General Disclaimer

- PIONEER CORPORATION does not guarantee the operation of this CD-ROM with respect to personal computers using any of the applicable OS. In addition, PIONEER CORPORATION is not liable for any damages incurred as a result of use of this CD-ROM and is not responsible for any compensation. The names of private corporations, products and other entities described herein are the registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective firms.

Using AVNavigator

1 Click [AVNavigator] on the desktop to launch AVNavigator.

AVNavigator is launched and **Wiring Navi** starts up. The language selection screen appears. Follow the instructions on the screen to make the connections and automatic settings.

Wiring Navi only starts up automatically the first time AVNavigator is launched.

2 Select and use the desired function.

AVNavigator includes the following functions:

- **Wiring Navi** – Guides you through connections and initial settings in dialog fashion. High precision initial settings can be made easily.
- **Interactive Manual** – Automatically displays the pages explaining the functions that have been operated on the receiver. It is also possible to operate the receiver from the Interactive Manual.
- **Glossary** – Displays glossary pages.
- **MCACC Appli** – Displays Advanced MCACC measurement results vividly on the computer.
  There are special operating instructions for MCACC Application. These instructions are included in the AVNavigator **Interactive Manual**'s menus. Refer to them when using MCACC Application.
- **Software Update** – Allows various types of software to be updated.
- **Settings** – Used to make various AVNavigator settings.
- **Detection** – Used to detect the receiver.

Note

To use the AVNavigator of another model, first uninstall (delete) this receiver's AVNavigator, then install the AVNavigator of the other model.

Deleting the AVNavigator

You can use the following method to uninstall (delete) the AVNavigator from your PC.

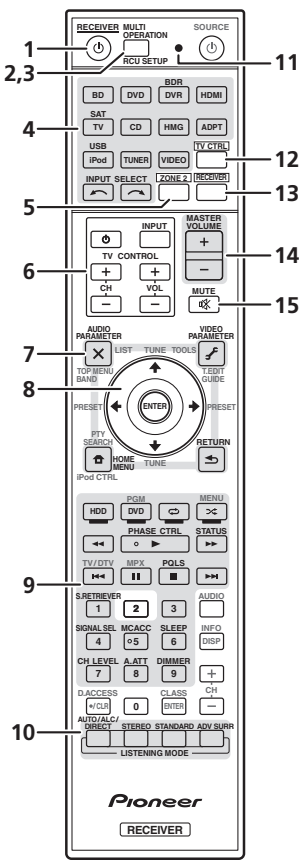
● **Delete from the Control Panel of the PC.**

From the Start menu, click "Program" → "PIONEER CORPORATION" → "AVNavigator(VSX-1021 or VSX-921)" → "Uninstall".

Controls and displays

Remote control

This section explains how to operate the remote control for the receiver.



The remote has been conveniently color-coded according to component control using the following system:

- **White** – Receiver control, TV control
- **Blue** – Other controls (See pages 27, 28, 30, 31 and 54.)

1 ⏻ RECEIVER

This switches between standby and on for this receiver.

2 MULTI OPERATION

Use this button to perform multi operations (page 52).

3 RCU SETUP

Use to input the preset code when making remote control settings and to set the remote control mode (page 50).

4 Input function buttons

Press to select control of other components (page 50).
Use **INPUT SELECT** ←/ → to select the input function (page 27).

5 ZONE 2

Switch to perform operations in **ZONE 2** (page 47).

6 TV CONTROL buttons

These buttons are dedicated to control the TV assigned to the **TV CTRL** button.

7 Receiver setting buttons

Press RECEIVER first to access:

- **AUDIO PARAMETER** – Use to access the Audio options (page 44).
- **VIDEO PARAMETER** – Use to access the Video options (page 46).
- **HOME MENU** – Use to access the Home Menu (pages 23, 24, 41, 56 and 62).
- **RETURN** – Press to confirm and exit the current menu screen.

8 ↑/↓/←/→/ENTER

Use the arrow buttons when setting up your surround sound system (see page 56) and the Audio or Video options (page 44 or 46).

9 Receiver Control buttons

Press RECEIVER first to access:

- **PHASE CTRL** – Press to switch on/off Phase Control (page 34).
- **STATUS** – Press to check selected receiver settings (page 48).
- **PQLS** – Press to select the PQLS setting (page 42).
- **S.RETRIEVER** – Press to restore CD quality sound to compressed audio sources (page 44).
- **SIGNAL SEL** – Use to select an input signal (page 34).
- **MCACC** – Press to switch between MCACC presets (page 34).
- **SLEEP** – Use to put the receiver in sleep mode and select the amount of time before sleep (page 48).
- **CH LEVEL** – Press repeatedly to select a channel, then use ←/→ to adjust the level (page 63).
- **A.ATT** – Attenuates (lowers) the level of an analog input signal to prevent distortion (page 48).
- **DIMMER** – Dims or brightens the display (page 48).

10 LISTENING MODE controls

- **AUTO/ALC/DIRECT** – Switches between Auto Surround (page 33), Auto Level Control mode and Stream Direct mode (page 34).
- **STEREO** – Press to select stereo playback mode (page 33).
- **STANDARD** – Press for Standard decoding and to switch various modes (DD Pro Logic, Neo:6, etc.) (page 33).
- **ADV SURR** – Use to switch between the various surround modes (page 33).

11 Remote control LED

Lights when a command is sent from the remote control.

12 TV CTRL

Set the preset code of your TV's manufacturer when controlling the TV (page 50).

13 RECEIVER

Switches the remote to control the receiver (used to select the white commands).
Switch to perform operations in the main zone. Also use this button to set up surround sound.

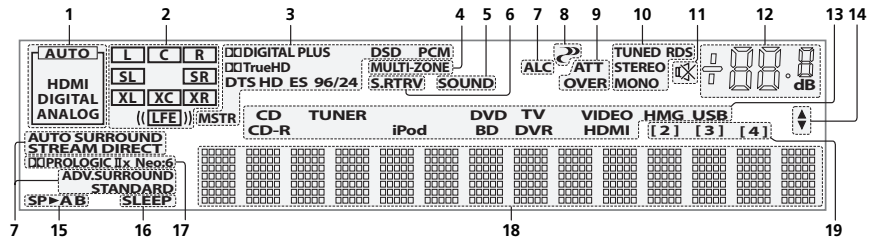
14 MASTER VOLUME +/–

Use to set the listening volume.

15 MUTE

Mutes the sound or restores the sound if it has been muted (adjusting the volume also restores the sound).

Display



1 Signal indicators

Light to indicate the currently selected input signal. **AUTO** lights when the receiver is set to select the input signal automatically (page 34).

2 Program format indicators

Light to indicate the channels to which digital signals are being input.

- **L/R** – Left front/Right front channel
- **C** – Center channel
- **SL/SR** – Left surround/Right surround channel
- **LFE** – Low frequency effects channel (the **(( ))** indicators light when an LFE signal is being input)
- **XL/XR** – Two channels other than the ones above
- **XC** – Either one channel other than the ones above, the mono surround channel or matrix encode flag

3 Digital format indicators

Light when a signal encoded in the corresponding format is detected.

- **DD DIGITAL** – Lights with Dolby Digital decoding.
- **DD DIGITAL PLUS** – Lights with Dolby Digital Plus decoding.
- **DD TrueHD** – Lights with Dolby TrueHD decoding.
- **DTS** – Lights with DTS decoding.
- **DTS HD** – Lights with DTS-HD decoding.
- **96/24** – Lights with DTS 96/24 decoding.
- **DSD PCM** – Light during DSD (Direct Stream Digital) to PCM conversion with SACDs.
- **PCM** – Lights during playback of PCM signals.
- **MSTR** – Lights during playback of DTS-HD Master Audio signals.

4 MULTI-ZONE

Lights when the **MULTI-ZONE** feature is active (page 47).

5 SOUND

Lights when the **DIALOG E** (Dialog Enhancement) or **TONE** (tone controls) features is selected (page 44).

6 S.RTRV

Lights when the Sound Retriever function is active (page 44).

7 Listening mode indicators

- **AUTO SURROUND** – Lights when the Auto Surround feature is switched on (page 33).
- **ALC** – Lights when the ALC (Auto level control) mode is selected (page 33).
- **STREAM DIRECT** – Lights when Direct/Pure Direct is selected (page 34).
- **ADV.SURROUND** – Lights when one of the Advanced Surround modes has been selected (page 33).
- **STANDARD** – Lights when one of the Standard Surround modes is switched on (page 33).

8 (PHASE CONTROL)

Lights when the Phase Control is switched on (page 34).

9 Analog signal indicators

Light to indicate reducing the level of an analog signal (page 48).

10 Tuner indicators

- **TUNED** – Lights when a broadcast is being received.
- **STEREO** – Lights when a stereo FM broadcast is being received in auto stereo mode.
- **MONO** – Lights when the mono mode is set using **MPX**.
- **RDS** – Lights when an RDS broadcast is received.

11

Lights when the sound is muted.

12 Master volume level

Shows the overall volume level.
"**---**" indicates the minimum level, and "**+12dB**" indicates the maximum level.

13 Input function indicators

Light to indicate the input function you have selected.

14 Scroll indicators

Light when there are more selectable items when making the various settings.

15 Speaker indicators

Lights to indicate the current speaker system using **SPEAKERS** (page 47).

16 SLEEP

Lights when the receiver is in sleep mode (page 48).

17 Matrix decoding format indicators

- **DDPRO LOGIC IIx** – This lights to indicate DD Pro Logic II / DD Pro Logic IIx decoding (page 33).
- **Neo:6** – When one of the Neo:6 modes of the receiver is on, this lights to indicate Neo:6 processing (page 33).

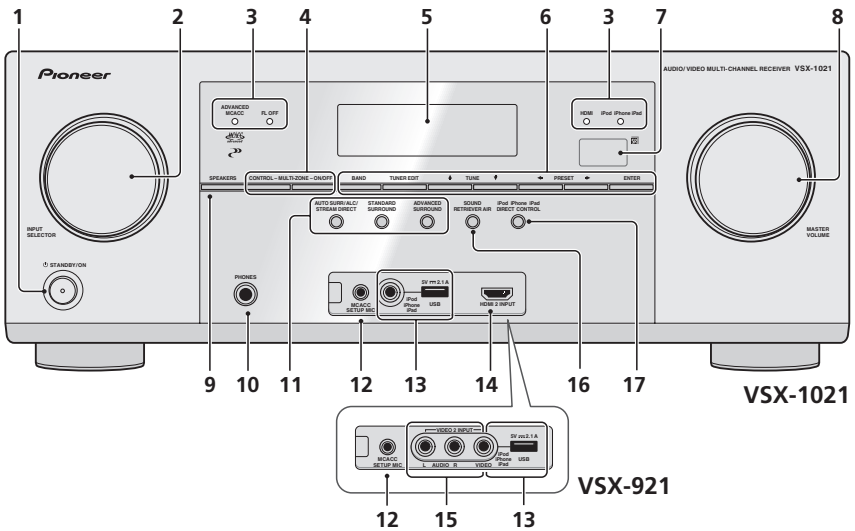
18 Character display

Displays various system information.

19 Remote control mode indicator

Lights to indicate the receiver's remote control mode setting. (Not displayed when set to **1**.) (page 66)

Front panel



1 ⏻ STANDBY/ON
This switches between standby and on for this receiver.

2 INPUT SELECTOR dial
Use to select an input function.

3 Indicators
- **ADVANCED MCACC** – Lights when **EQ** is set to **ON** in the **AUDIO PARAMETER** menu (page 44).
- **FL OFF** – Lights when "off" (nothing displayed) is selected with the display's dimmer adjustment (page 48).
- **HDMI** – Blinks when connecting an HDMI-equipped component; lights when the component is connected (page 16).
- **iPod iPhone iPad** – Lights to indicate iPod/ iPhone/iPad is connected (page 20).

4 MULTI-ZONE controls
If you've made MULTI-ZONE connections (page 19) use these controls to control the sub zone from the main zone (page 47).

5 Character display
See *Display* on page 8 .

6 TUNER controls
- **BAND** – Switches between AM and FM radio bands (page 30).
- **TUNER EDIT** – Use with **TUNE** ⬆/⬇, **PRESET** ⬅/➡ and **ENTER** to memorize and name stations for recall (page 30).
- **TUNE** ⬆/⬇ – Find radio frequencies (page 30).
- **PRESET** ⬅/➡ – Find preset stations (page 30).

7 Remote sensor
Receives the signals from the remote control (page 5).

8 MASTER VOLUME dial

9 SPEAKERS
Use to change the speaker terminal (page 47).

10 PHONES jack
Use to connect headphones. When the headphones are connected, there is no sound output from the speakers.

11 Listening mode buttons
- **AUTO SURR/ALC/STREAM DIRECT** – Switches between Auto Surround (page 33), Auto Level Control and Stream Direct mode (page 34).
- **STANDARD SURROUND** – Press for Standard decoding and to switch various modes (DD Pro Logic, Neo:6, Stereo etc.) (page 33).
- **ADVANCED SURROUND** – Use to switch between the various surround modes (page 33).

12 MCACC SETUP MIC jack
Use to connect the supplied microphone (page 23).

13 iPod iPhone iPad USB terminals
Use to connect your Apple iPod/iPhone/iPad as an audio and video source (page 20), or connect a USB device for audio and photo playback (page 21).

14 HDMI input connector
Use for connection to a compatible HDMI device (Video camera, etc.) (page 21).

15 AUDIO/VIDEO input
See *Connecting to the front panel video terminal* on page 21 .

16 SOUND RETRIEVER AIR
When the button is pressed, the input switches to **ADAPTER PORT** and the listening mode is automatically set to **SOUND RETRIEVER AIR** (page 32).

17 iPod iPhone iPad DIRECT CONTROL
Change the receiver's input to the iPod and enable iPod operations on the iPod (page 28).

Connecting your equipment

Connecting your equipment

This receiver provides you with many connection possibilities, but it doesn't have to be difficult. This chapter explains the kinds of components you can connect to make up your home theater system.

CAUTION

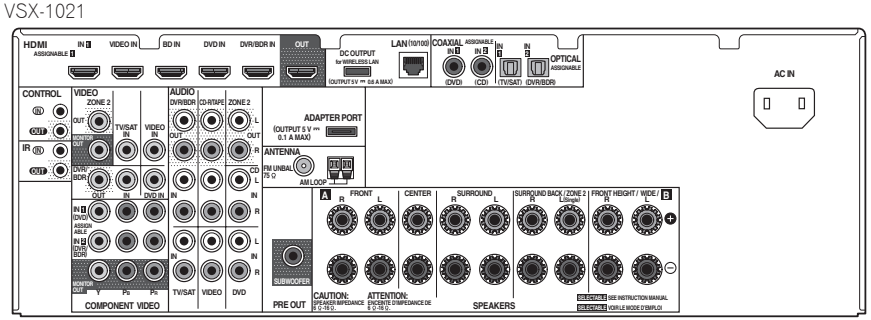
Before making or changing the connections, switch off the power and disconnect the power cord from the power outlet. Plugging in should be the final step.

Important

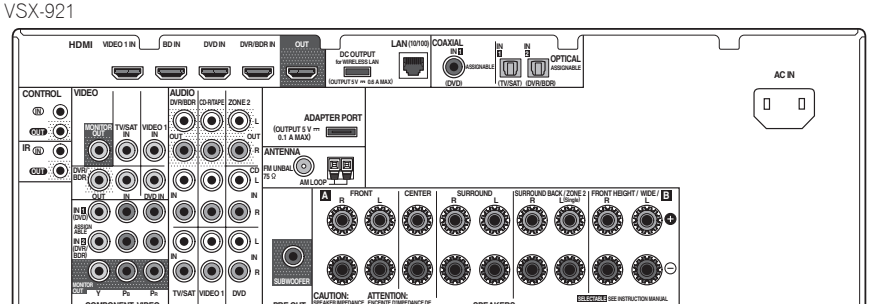
Illustration shows the VSX-1021, however connections for the VSX-921 are the same except where noted.

Rear panel

VSX-1021



VSX-921



Note

The input functions below are assigned by default to the receiver's different input terminals. Refer to *The Input Setup menu* on page 24 to change the assignments if other connections are used.

Input function	Input Terminals		
	Digital	HDMI	Component
DVD	COAX-1	(DVD)	IN 1
BD		(BD)	
TV/SAT	OPT-1		
DVR/BDR	OPT-2	(DVR/BDR)	IN 2
VIDEO <a>		(VIDEO)	
VIDEO 1 <b>		(VIDEO 1)	
HDMI 1 <a>		IN 1	
HDMI 2 <a>		(HDMI 2)	
CD	COAX-2 <a>		

a VSX-1021 only

b VSX-921 only

Determining the speakers' application

This unit permits you to build various surround systems, in accordance with the number of speakers you have.

- Be sure to connect speakers to the front left and right channels (**L** and **R**).
- It is also possible to only connect one of the surround back speakers (**SB**) or neither.

Choose one from Plans [A] to [E] below.

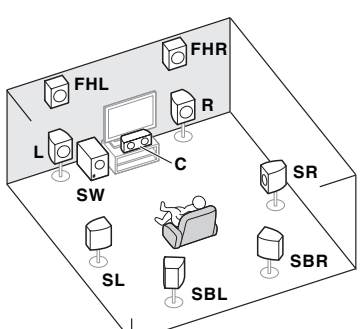
Important

- The **Speaker System** setting must be made if you use any of the connections shown below other than [A] (see *Speaker system setting* on page 62).
- Sound does not come through simultaneously from the front height, front wide, speaker B and surround back speakers. Output speakers are different depending on the input signal or listening mode.

[A] 7.1 channel surround system (Front height)

**Default setting*

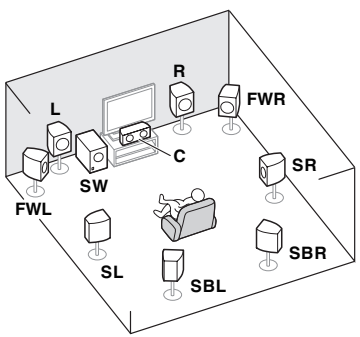
- **Speaker System** setting: **Normal(SB/FH)**



A 7.1 ch surround system connects the left and right front speakers (**L**/**R**), the center speaker (**C**), the left and right front height speakers (**FHL**/**FHR**), the left and right surround speakers (**SL**/**SR**), the left and right surround back speakers (**SBL**/**SBR**), and the subwoofer (**SW**).
It is not possible to produce sound simultaneously from the front height or front wide speakers and the surround back speakers.
This surround system produces a more true-to-life sound from above.

[B] 7.1 channel surround system (Front wide)

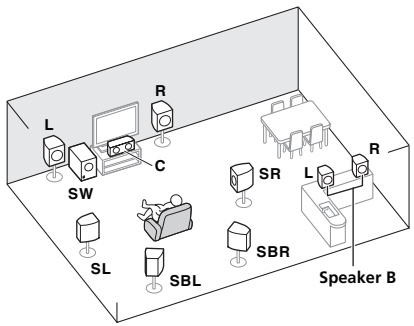
- **Speaker System** setting: **Normal(SB/FW)**



This plan replaces the left and right front height speakers shown in [A] with the left and right front wide speakers (**FWL**/**FWR**).
It is not possible to produce sound simultaneously from the front height or front wide speakers and the surround back speakers.
This surround system produces a true-to-life sound over a wider area.

[C] 7.1 channel surround system & Speaker B connection

- **Speaker System** setting: **Speaker B**

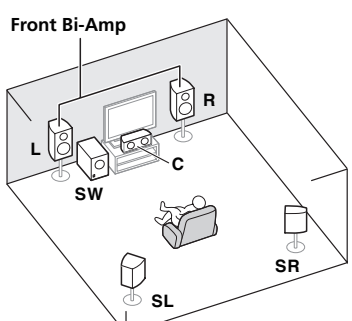


With these connections you can simultaneously enjoy 5.1-channel surround sound in the main zone with stereo playback of the same sound on the B speakers. The same connections also allow for 7.1-channel surround sound in the main zone when not using the B speakers.

[D] 5.1 channel surround system & Front Bi-amping connection (High quality surround)

- **Speaker System** setting: **Front Bi-Amp**

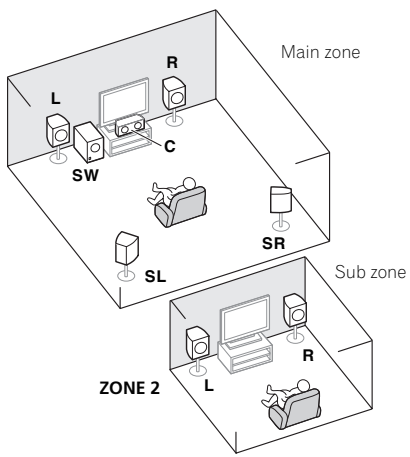
Bi-amping connection of the front speakers for high sound quality with 5.1-channel surround sound.



[E] 5.1 channel surround system & ZONE 2 connection (Multi Zone)

- **Speaker System** setting: **ZONE 2**

With these connections you can simultaneously enjoy 5.1-channel surround sound in the main zone with stereo playback on another component in ZONE 2. (The selection of input devices is limited.)

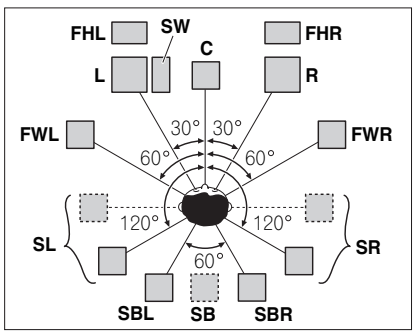


Other speaker connections

- Your favorite speaker connections can be selected even if you have fewer than 5.1 speakers (except front left/right speakers).
- When not connecting a subwoofer, connect speakers with low frequency reproduction capabilities to the front channel. (The subwoofer's low frequency component is played from the front speakers, so the speakers could be damaged.)
- After connecting, be sure to conduct the **Full Auto MCACC** (speaker environment setting) procedure. See *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 .

Placing the speakers

Refer to the chart below for placement of the speakers you intend to connect.



- Place the surround speakers at 120º from the center. If you, (1) use the surround back speaker, and, (2) don't use the front height speakers / front wide speakers, we recommend placing the surround speaker right beside you.
- If you intend to connect only one surround back speaker, place it directly behind you.
- Place the left and right front height speakers at least one meter directly above the left and right front speakers.

Some tips for improving sound quality

Where you put your speakers in the room has a big effect on the quality of the sound. The following guidelines should help you to get the best sound from your system.

- The subwoofer can be placed on the floor. Ideally, the other speakers should be at about ear-level when you're listening to them. Putting the speakers on the floor (except the subwoofer), or mounting them very high on a wall is not recommended.
- For the best stereo effect, place the front speakers 2 m to 3 m apart, at equal distance from the TV.
- If you're going to place speakers around your CRT TV, use shielded speakers or place the speakers at a sufficient distance from your CRT TV.
- If you're using a center speaker, place the front speakers at a wider angle. If not, place them at a narrower angle.
- Place the center speaker above or below the TV so that the sound of the center channel is localized at the TV screen. Also, make sure the center speaker does not cross the line formed by the leading edge of the front left and right speakers.
- It is best to angle the speakers towards the listening position. The angle depends on the size of the room. Use less of an angle for bigger rooms.
- Surround and surround back speakers should be positioned 60 cm to 90 cm higher than your ears and tilted slightly downward. Make sure the speakers don't face each other. For DVD-Audio, the speakers should be more directly behind the listener than for home theater playback.
- Try not to place the surround speakers farther away from the listening position than the front and center speakers. Doing so can weaken the surround sound effect.

Connecting the speakers

Each speaker connection on the receiver comprises a positive (+) and negative (–) terminal. Make sure to match these up with the terminals on the speakers themselves.

CAUTION

- These speaker terminals carry **HAZARDOUS LIVE** voltage. To prevent the risk of electric shock when connecting or disconnecting the speaker cables, disconnect the power cord before touching any uninsulated parts.
- Make sure that all the bare speaker wire is twisted together and inserted fully into the speaker terminal. If any of the bare speaker wire touches the back panel it may cause the power to cut off as a safety measure.

Bare wire connections

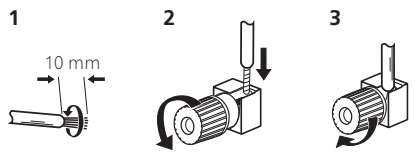
CAUTION

Make sure that all speakers are securely installed. This not only improves sound quality, but also reduces the risk of damage or injury resulting from speakers being knocked over or falling in the event of external shocks such as earthquakes.

1 Twist exposed wire strands together.

2 Loosen terminal and insert exposed wire.

3 Tighten terminal.



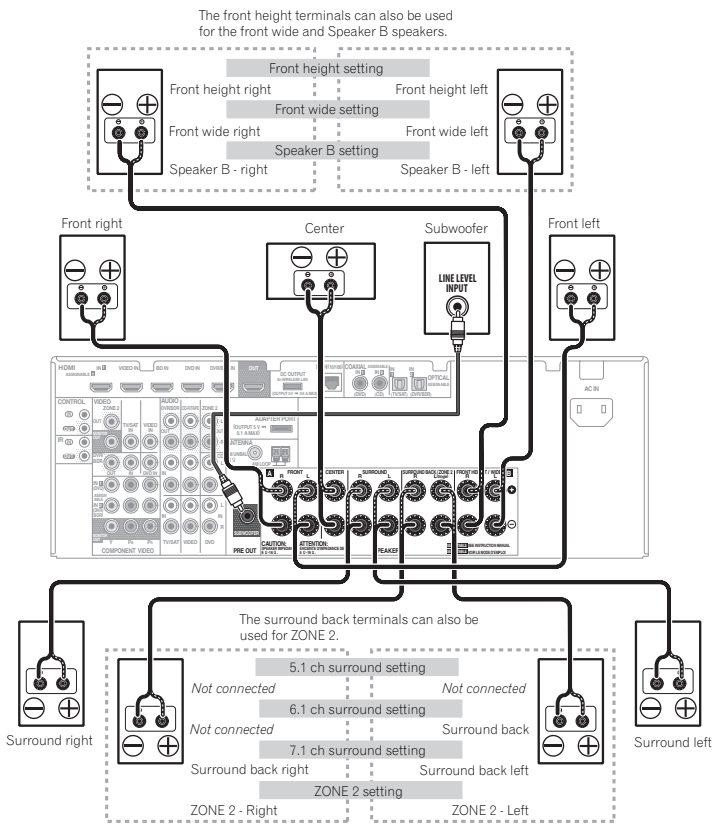
Note

- Please refer to the manual that came with your speakers for details on how to connect the other end of the speaker cables to your speakers.
- Use an RCA cable to connect the subwoofer. It is not possible to connect using speaker cables.

Installing your speaker system

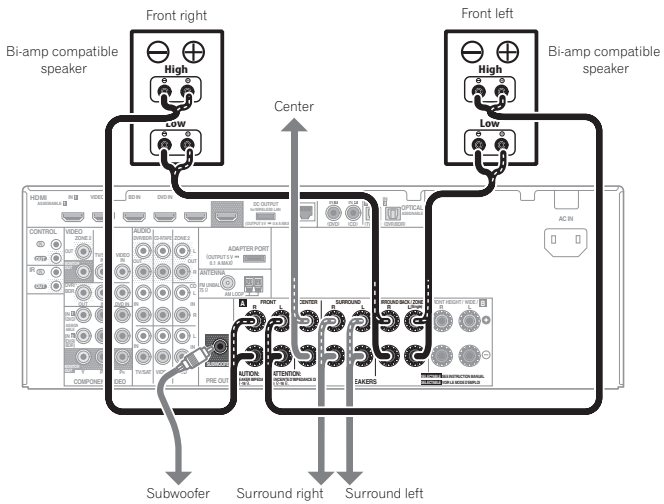
At the very least, front left and right speakers only are necessary. Note that your main surround speakers should always be connected as a pair, but you can connect just one surround back speaker if you like (it must be connected to the left surround back terminal).

Standard surround connection



Bi-amping your speakers

Bi-amping is when you connect the high frequency driver and low frequency driver of your speakers to different amplifiers for better crossover performance. Your speakers must be bi-ampable to do this (having separate terminals for high and low) and the sound improvement will depend on the kind of speakers you're using.



CAUTION

- Most speakers with both **High** and **Low** terminals have two metal plates that connect the **High** to the **Low** terminals. These must be removed when you are bi-amping the speakers or you could severely damage the amplifier. See your speaker manual for more information.
- If your speakers have a removable crossover network, make sure you do not remove it for bi-amping. Doing so may damage your speakers.

Bi-wiring your speakers

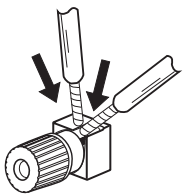
Your speakers can also be bi-wired if they support bi-amping.

- With these connections, the **Speaker System** setting makes no difference.

CAUTION

- Don't connect different speakers from the same terminal in this way.
- When bi-wiring as well, heed the cautions for bi-amping shown above.

● **To bi-wire a speaker, connect two speaker cords to the speaker terminal on the receiver.**



Selecting the Speaker system

The front height terminals can be used for front wide and Speaker B connections, in addition to for the front height speakers. Also, the surround back terminals can be used for bi-amping and ZONE 2 connections, in addition to for the surround back speakers. Make this setting according to the application.

Front height setup

**Default setting*

1 Connect a pair of speakers to the front height speaker terminals.
See *Standard surround connection* on page 13 .

2 If necessary, select 'Normal(SB/FH)' from the Speaker System menu.
See *Speaker system setting* on page 62 to do this.

Front wide setup

1 Connect a pair of speakers to the front height speaker terminals.
See *Standard surround connection* on page 13 .

2 Select 'Normal(SB/FW)' from the Speaker System menu.
See *Speaker system setting* on page 62 to do this.

Speaker B setup

You can listen to stereo playback in another room.

1 Connect a pair of speakers to the front height speaker terminals.
See *Standard surround connection* on page 13 .

2 Select 'Speaker B' from the Speaker System menu.
See *Speaker system setting* on page 62 to do this.

Bi-Amping setup

Bi-amping connection of the front speakers for high sound quality with 5.1-channel surround sound.

1 Connect bi-amp compatible speakers to the front and surround back speaker terminals.
See *Bi-amping your speakers* on page 13 .

2 Select 'Front Bi-Amp' from the Speaker System menu.
See *Speaker system setting* on page 62 to do this.

ZONE 2 setup

With these connections you can simultaneously enjoy 5.1-channel surround sound in the main zone with stereo playback on another component in ZONE 2.

1 Connect a pair of speakers to the surround back speaker terminals.
See *Standard surround connection* on page 13 .

2 Select 'ZONE 2' from the Speaker System menu.
See *Speaker system setting* on page 62 to do this.

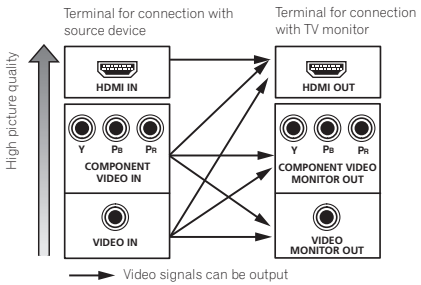
About the audio connection

	Types of cables and terminals	Transferable audio signals
Sound signal priority ↑	HDMI	HD audio
	Digital (Coaxial) Digital (Optical)	Conventional digital audio
	RCA (Analog) (*White/Red*)	Conventional analog audio

- With an HDMI cable, video and audio signals can be transferred in high quality over a single cable.

About the video converter

The video converter ensures that all video sources are output through all of the **MONITOR VIDEO OUT** jacks. The only exception is HDMI: since this resolution cannot be downsampled, you must connect your monitor/TV to the receiver's HDMI output when connecting this video source.
If several video components are assigned to the same input function (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24), the converter gives priority to HDMI, component, then composite (in that order).



Note

- If the video signal does not appear on your TV, try adjusting the resolution settings on your component or display. Note that some components (such as video game units) have resolutions that may not be converted. In this case, try switching Digital Video Conversion (in *Setting the Video options* on page 46) **OFF**.
- The signal input resolutions that can be converted from the component video input for the HDMI output are 480i/576i, 480p/576p, 720p and 1080i. 1080p signals cannot be converted.
- Only signals with an input resolution of 480i/576i can be converted from the component video input for the composite **MONITOR OUT** terminals.

This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

About HDMI

The HDMI connection transfers uncompressed digital video, as well as almost every kind of digital audio.
This receiver incorporates High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI®) technology.
This receiver supports the functions described below through HDMI connections.

- Digital transfer of uncompressed video (contents protected by HDCP (1080p/24, 1080p/60, etc.))
- 3D signal transfer
- Deep Color signal transfer
- x.v.Color signal transfer
- ARC (Audio Return Channel)
- Input of multi-channel linear PCM digital audio signals (192 kHz or less) for up to 8 channels
- Input of the following digital audio formats:
  - Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS, High bitrate audio (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio), DVD-Audio, CD, SACD (DSD signal), Video CD, Super VCD
- Synchronized operation with components using the **Control** with HDMI function (see *Control with HDMI function* on page 41)

Note

- An HDMI connection can only be made with DVI-equipped components compatible with both DVI and High Bandwidth Digital Content Protection (HDCP). If you choose to connect to a DVI connector, you will need a separate adaptor (DVI→HDMI) to do so. A DVI connection, however, does not support audio signals. Consult your local audio dealer for more information.
- If you connect a component that is not compatible with HDCP, an **HDCP ERROR** message is displayed on the front panel display. Some components that are compatible with HDCP still cause this message to be displayed, but so long as there is no problem with displaying video this is not a malfunction.
- Depending on the component you have connected, using a DVI connection may result in unreliable signal transfers.
- This receiver supports SACD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD and DTS-HD Master Audio. To take advantage of these formats, however, make sure that the component connected to this receiver also supports the corresponding format.
- Use a High Speed HDMI® cable. If an HDMI cable other than a High Speed HDMI® cable is used, it may not work properly.
- When an HDMI cable with a built-in equalizer is connected, it may not operate properly.
- Signal transfer is only possible when connected to a compatible component.
- HDMI format digital audio transmissions require a longer time to be recognized. Due to this, interruption in the audio may occur when switching between audio formats or beginning playback.
- Turning on/off the device connected to this unit's **HDMI OUT** terminal during playback, or disconnecting/connecting the HDMI cable during playback, may cause noise or interrupted audio.

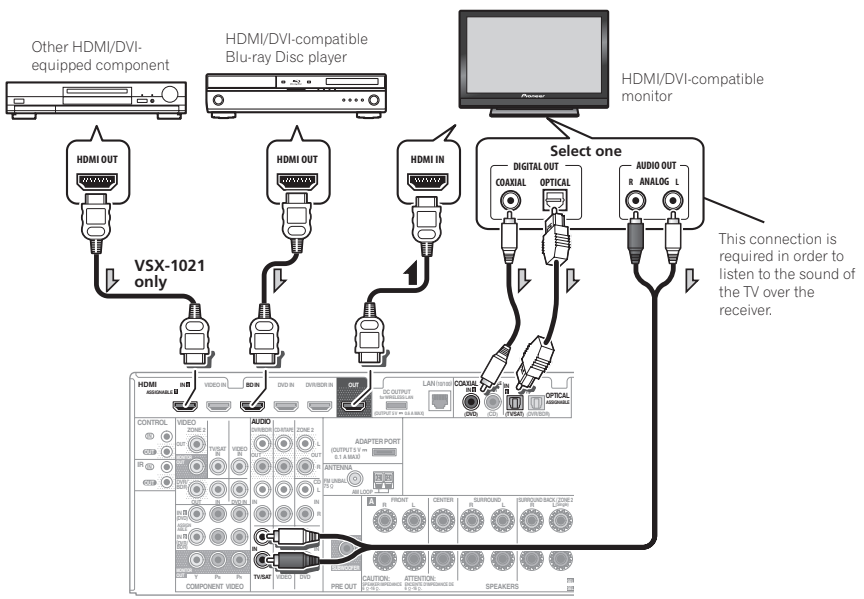
HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing, LLC in the United States and other countries.

"x.v.Color" and **x.v.Color** *are trademarks of Sony Corporation.*

Connecting your TV and playback components

Connecting using HDMI

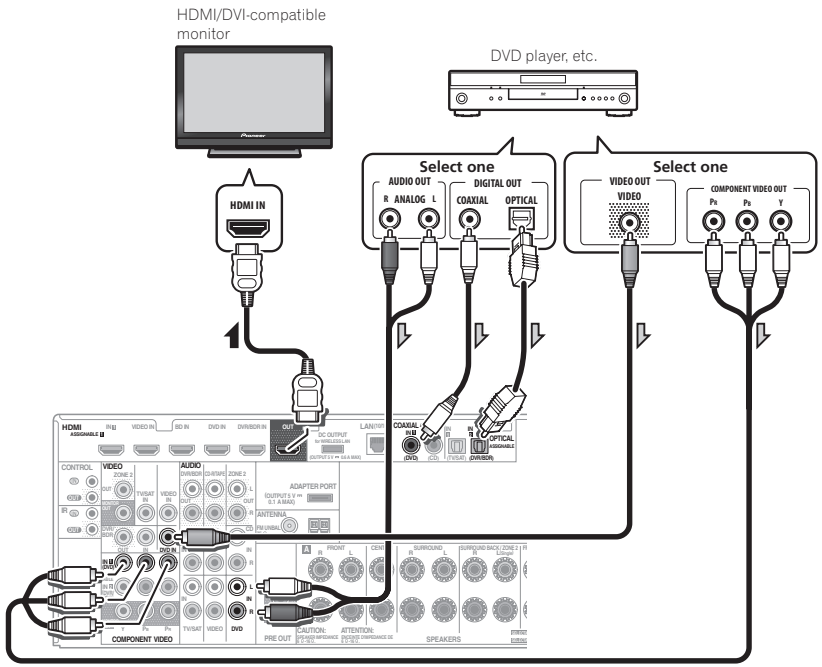
If you have an HDMI or DVI (with HDCP) equipped component (Blu-ray Disc player (BD), etc.), you can connect it to this receiver using a commercially available HDMI cable.
If the TV and playback components support the **Control** with HDMI feature, the convenient **Control** with HDMI functions can be used (see *Control with HDMI function* on page 41).



- For input components, connections other than HDMI connections are also possible (see *Connecting your DVD player with no HDMI output* on page 16).
- If you want to listen to the sound of the TV over the receiver, connect the receiver and TV with audio cables.
  - When the TV and receiver are connected by HDMI connections, if the TV supports the HDMI ARC (Audio Return Channel) function, the sound of the TV is input to the receiver via the **HDMI OUT** terminal, so there is no need to connect an audio cable. In this case, set **TV Audio** at **HDMI Setup** to **via HDMI** (see *HDMI Setup* on page 41).

Connecting your DVD player with no HDMI output

This diagram shows connections of a TV (with HDMI input) and DVD player (or other playback component with no HDMI output) to the receiver.

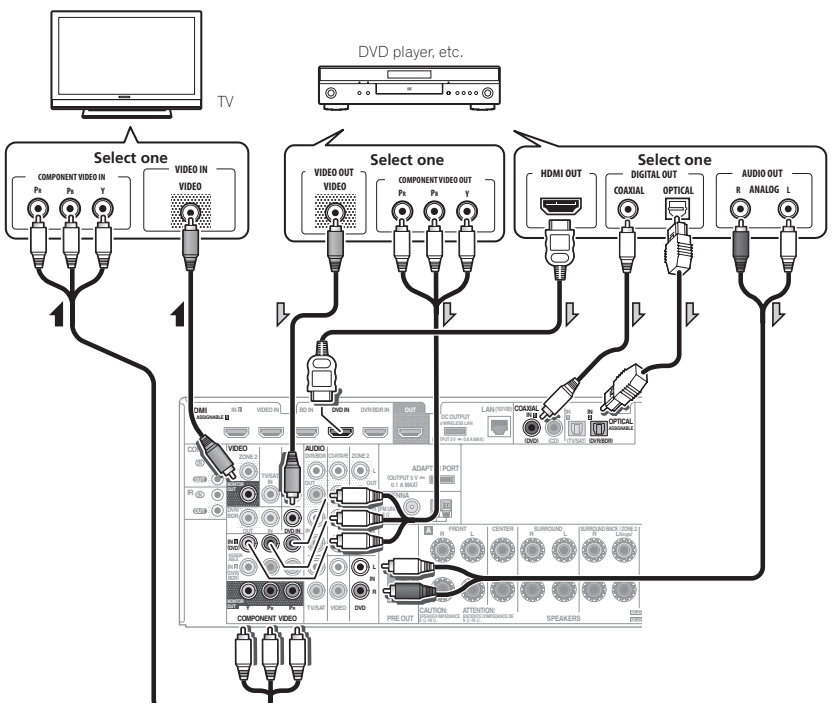


- If you want to listen to the sound of the TV over the receiver, connect the receiver and TV with audio cables (page 16).
  - When the TV and receiver are connected by HDMI connections, if the TV supports the HDMI ARC (Audio Return Channel) function, the sound of the TV is input to the receiver via the **HDMI OUT** terminal, so there is no need to connect an audio cable. In this case, set **TV Audio** at **HDMI Setup** to **via HDMI** (see *HDMI Setup* on page 41).
- If you use an optical digital audio cable, you'll need to tell the receiver which digital input you connected the player to (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).

Connecting your TV with no HDMI input

This diagram shows connections of a TV (with no HDMI input) and DVD player (or other playback component) to the receiver.

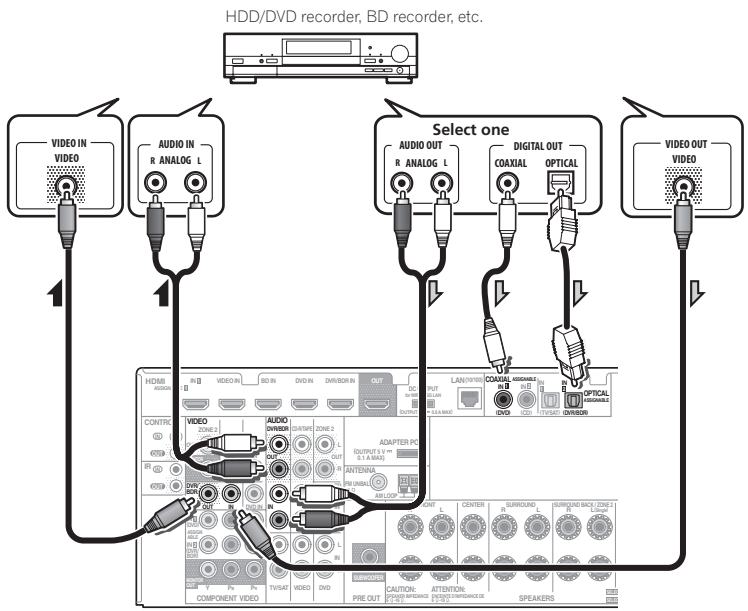
- With these connections, the picture is not output to the TV even if the DVD player is connected with an HDMI cable. Connect the DVD player's video signals using a composite or component cord.



- Connect using an HDMI cable to listen to HD audio on the receiver. Do not use an HDMI cable to input video signals.
  Depending on the video component, it may not be possible to output signals connected by HDMI and other methods simultaneously, and it may be necessary to make output settings. Please refer to the operating instructions supplied with your component for more information.
- If you want to listen to the sound of the TV over the receiver, connect the receiver and TV with audio cables (page 16).
- If you use an optical digital audio cable, you'll need to tell the receiver which digital input you connected the player to (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).

Connecting an HDD/DVD recorder, BD recorder and other video sources

This receiver has two sets of audio/video inputs and outputs suitable for connecting analog or digital video devices, including HDD/DVD recorders and BD recorders.
When you set up the receiver you'll need to tell the receiver which input you connected the recorder to (see also *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).

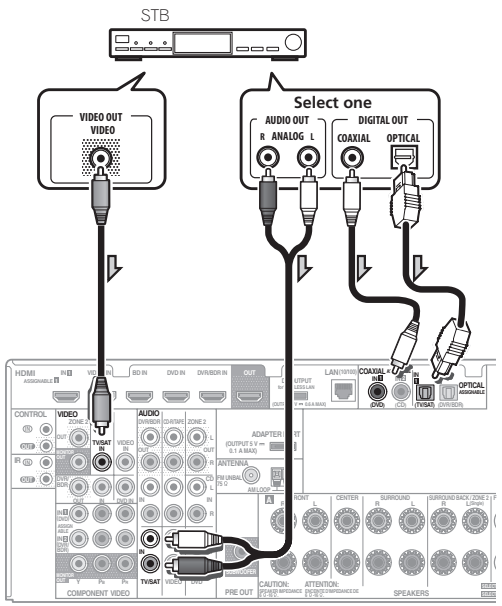


- In order to record, you must connect the analog audio cables (the digital connection is for playback only) (page 48).
- If your HDD/DVD recorder, BD recorder, etc., is equipped with an HDMI output terminal, we recommend connecting it to the receiver's **HDMI DVR/BDR IN** terminal. When doing so, also connect the receiver and TV by HDMI (see *Connecting using HDMI* on page 16).

Connecting a satellite/cable receiver or other set-top box

Satellite and cable receivers, and terrestrial digital TV tuners are all examples of so-called 'set-top boxes'.

When you set up the receiver you'll need to tell the receiver which input you connected the set-top box to (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).

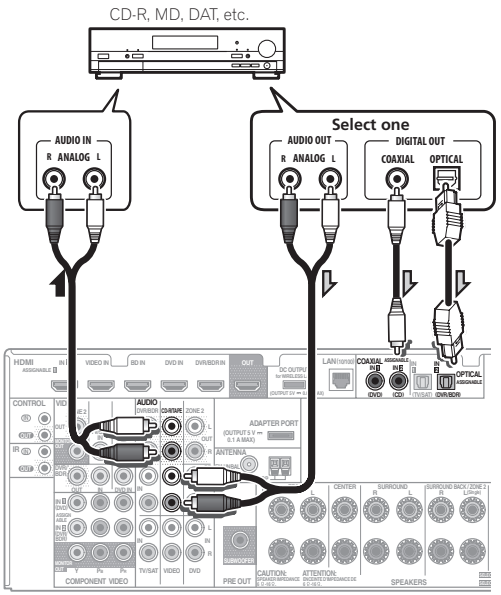


- *VSX-1021 only:*
  If your set-top box is equipped with an HDMI output terminal, we recommend connecting it to the receiver's **HDMI IN 1** terminal. When doing so, also connect the receiver and TV by HDMI (see *Connecting using HDMI* on page 16).

Connecting other audio components

This receiver has both digital and analog inputs, allowing you to connect audio components for playback.

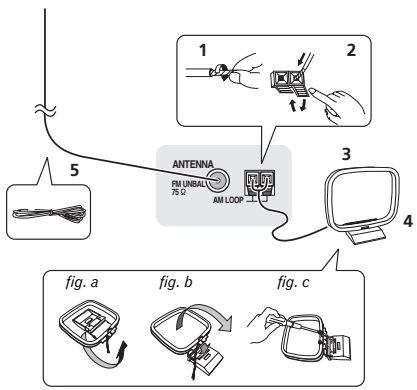
When you set up the receiver you'll need to tell the receiver which input you connected the component to (see also *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).



- If you're connecting a recorder, connect the analog audio outputs to the analog audio inputs on the recorder.
- If your turntable has line-level outputs (i.e., it has a built-in phono pre-amp), connect it to the **CD** inputs instead.

Connecting AM/FM antennas

Connect the AM loop antenna and the FM wire antenna as shown below. To improve reception and sound quality, connect external antennas (see *Connecting external antennas* on page 19).



1 Pull off the protective shields of both AM antenna wires.

2 Push open the tabs, then insert one wire fully into each terminal, then release the tabs to secure the AM antenna wires.

3 Fix the AM loop antenna to the attached stand.

To fix the stand to the antenna, bend in the direction indicated by the arrow (*fig. a*) then clip the loop onto the stand (*fig. b*).

- If you plan to mount the AM antenna to a wall or other surface, secure the stand with screws (*fig. c*) before clipping the loop to the stand. Make sure the reception is clear.

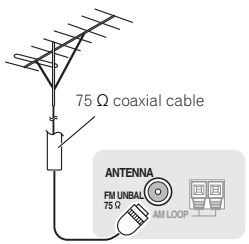
4 Place the AM antenna on a flat surface and in a direction giving the best reception.

5 Connect the FM wire antenna into the FM antenna socket.

For best results, extend the FM antenna fully and fix to a wall or door frame. Don't drape loosely or leave coiled up.

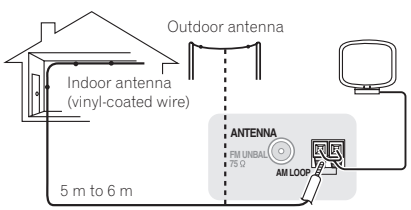
Connecting external antennas

To improve FM reception, connect an external FM antenna to **FM UNBAL 75 Ω**.



To improve AM reception, connect a 5 m to 6 m length of vinyl-coated wire to the **AM LOOP** terminals without disconnecting the supplied AM loop antenna.

For the best possible reception, suspend horizontally outdoors.



MULTI-ZONE setup

This receiver can power up to two independent systems in separate rooms after you have made the proper MULTI-ZONE connections.

Different sources can be playing in two zones at the same time or, depending on your needs, the same source can also be used. The main and sub zone have independent power (the main zone power can be off while sub zone is on) and the sub zone can be controlled by the remote or front panel controls.

Important

VSX-921 model cannot connect the TV monitor for sub zone.

Making MULTI-ZONE connections

It is possible to make these connections if you have a separate TV and speakers for the sub zone (**ZONE 2**). You will also need a separate amplifier if you are not using the *MULTI-ZONE setup using speaker terminals (ZONE 2)* on page 19 for the sub zone.

MULTI-ZONE listening options

The following table shows the signals that can be output to ZONE 2:

In case of VSX-1021

Sub Zone	Input functions available
ZONE 2	**DVD**, **TV/SAT**, **DVR/BDR**, **VIDEO**, **HOME MEDIA GALLERY**, **iPod/USB**, **CD**, **CD-R/TAPE**, **TUNER**, **ADAPTER PORT** (Outputs analog audio, composite video.)

It is not possible to down-convert the audio and video input signals from the **HDMI** input terminals, digital input terminals (**OPTICAL** and **COAXIAL**) and the **COMPONENT VIDEO** input terminals and output them to ZONE 2.

In case of VSX-921

Sub Zone	Input functions available
ZONE 2	**DVD**, **TV/SAT**, **DVR/BDR**, **VIDEO 1**, **VIDEO 2**, **CD**, **CD-R/TAPE**, **TUNER**, **ADAPTER PORT** (Output analog audio only.)

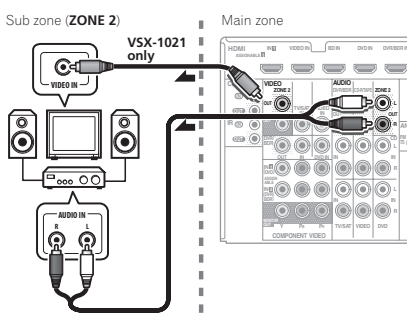
It is not possible to down-convert the audio input signal from the **HDMI** input terminals or digital input terminals (**OPTICAL** and **COAXIAL**) and output them to ZONE 2.

Basic MULTI-ZONE setup (ZONE 2)

1 Connect a separate amplifier to the AUDIO ZONE 2 OUT jacks on this receiver.

You should have a pair of speakers attached to the sub zone amplifier as shown in the following illustration.

2 *VSX-1021 only:* Connect a TV monitor to the VIDEO ZONE 2 OUT jack on this receiver.

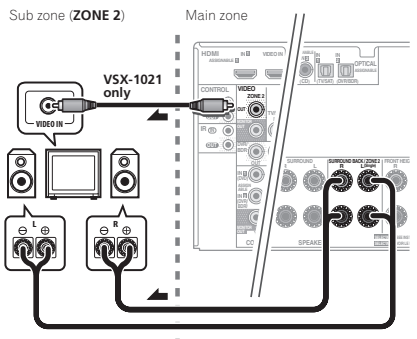


MULTI-ZONE setup using speaker terminals (ZONE 2)

You must select **ZONE 2** in *Speaker system setting* on page 62 to use this setup.

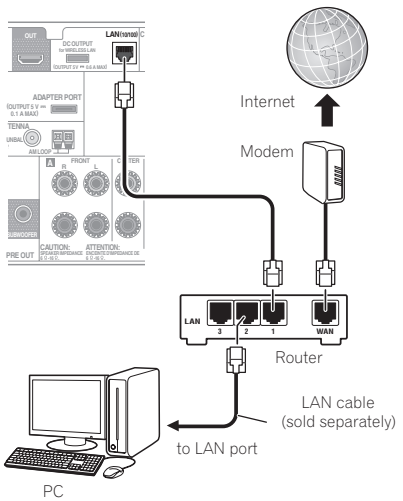
1 Connect a pair of speakers to the surround back speaker terminals.

2 *VSX-1021 only:* Connect a TV monitor to the VIDEO ZONE 2 OUT jack on this receiver.



Connecting to the network through LAN interface

By connecting this receiver to the network via the LAN terminal, you can listen to Internet radio stations. To listen to Internet radio stations, you must sign a contract with an ISP (Internet Service Provider) beforehand.
When connected in this way, you can play audio files stored on the components on the network, including your computer, using HOME MEDIA GALLERY inputs.



Connect the LAN terminal on this receiver to the LAN terminal on your router (with or without the built-in DHCP server function) with a straight LAN cable (CAT 5 or higher).
Turn on the DHCP server function of your router. In case your router does not have the built-in DHCP server function, it is necessary to set up the network manually. For details, see *Network Setup menu* on page 64 .

LAN terminal specifications

- LAN terminal : Ethernet jack (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX)

Note

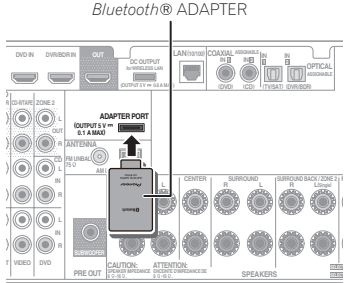
- Refer to the operation manual of the equipment you have as the connected equipment and connection method may differ depending on your Internet environment.
- When using a broadband Internet connection, a contract with an Internet service provider is required. For more details, contact your nearest Internet service provider.

Connecting optional *Bluetooth* ADAPTER

When the *Bluetooth*® ADAPTER (AS-BT100 or AS-BT200) is connected to this receiver, a product equipped with *Bluetooth* wireless technology (portable cell phone, digital music player, etc.) can be used to listen to music wirelessly.

- The *Bluetooth* wireless technology enabled device must support A2DP profiles.
- Pioneer does not guarantee proper connection and operation of this unit with all *Bluetooth* wireless technology enabled devices.

Bluetooth® ADAPTER



Important

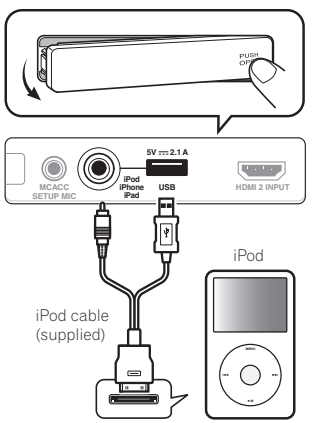
- Do not move the receiver with the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER connected. Doing so could cause damage or faulty contact.

● Switch the receiver into standby and connect *Bluetooth* ADAPTER to the ADAPTER PORT.

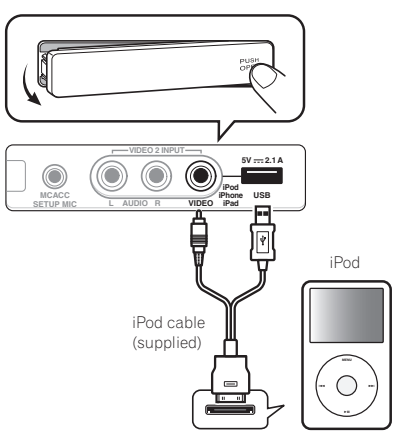
- For instructions on playing the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device, see *Pairing the Bluetooth ADAPTER and Bluetooth wireless technology device* on page 31 .

Connecting an iPod

This receiver has a dedicated iPod terminal that will allow you to control playback of audio content from your iPod using the controls of this receiver.
In case of VSX-1021



In case of VSX-921



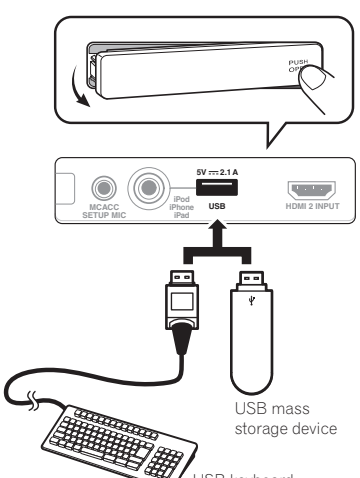
● **Switch the receiver into standby then use the supplied iPod cable to connect your iPod to the iPod iPhone iPad USB terminal on the front panel of this receiver.**

- It is also possible to connect using the cable included with the iPod, but in this case it is not possible to view pictures via the receiver.
- For the cable connection, also refer to the operating instructions for your iPod.
- For instructions on playing the iPod, see *Playing an iPod* on page 27 .

Connecting a USB device

It is possible to play audio and photo files by connecting USB devices to this receiver. It is also possible to connect a USB keyboard (US-international layout) to the receiver to enter text in the following GUI screens.

- Change the input name in the **Input Setup** menu (page 24).
- Add names to radio station presets (page 30).

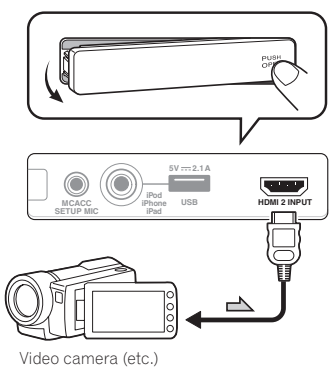


● **Switch the receiver into standby then connect your USB device to the USB terminal on the front panel of this receiver.**

- This receiver does not support a USB hub.
- For instructions on playing the USB device, see *Playing a USB device* on page 28 .

Connecting an HDMI-equipped component to the front panel input

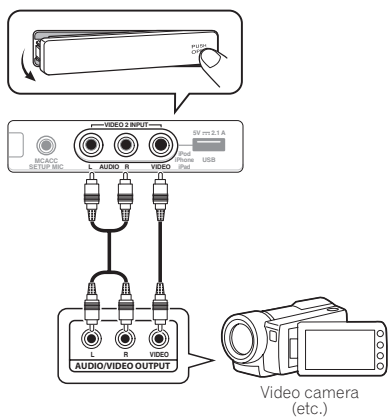
VSX-1021 only



Connecting to the front panel video terminal

VSX-921 only

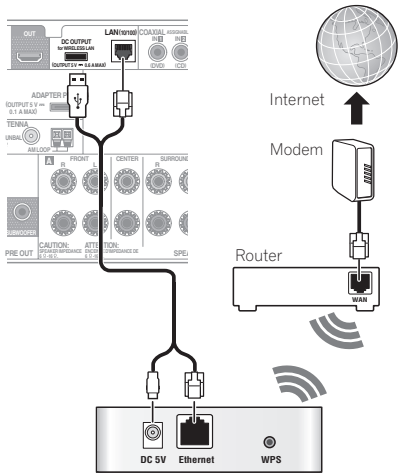
Front **VIDEO 2** connections are accessed via the front panel using the **INPUT SELECTOR** or **INPUT SELECT ←/→** button on the remote control. There are standard audio/video jacks. Hook them up the same way you made the rear panel connections.



Connecting to a wireless LAN

Wireless connection to the network is possible through a wireless LAN connection. Use the separately sold AS-WL300 for connection.

- For instructions on setting the wireless LAN converter, see *Network Setup menu* on page 64 .



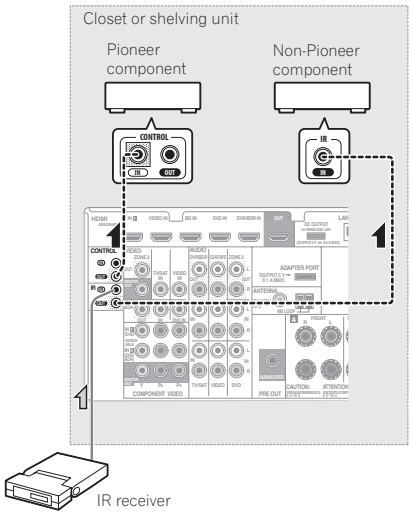
Wireless LAN converter (AS-WL300)

Connecting an IR receiver

If you keep your stereo components in a closed cabinet or shelving unit, or you wish to use the sub zone remote control in another zone, you can use an optional IR receiver (such as a Niles or Xantech unit) to control your system instead of the remote sensor on the front panel of this receiver.

- Remote operation may not be possible if direct light from a strong fluorescent lamp is shining on the IR receiver remote sensor window.
- Note that other manufacturers may not use the IR terminology. Refer to the manual that came with your component to check for IR compatibility.
- If using two remote controls (at the same time), the IR receiver's remote sensor takes priority over the remote sensor on the front panel.

1 Connect the IR receiver sensor to the IR IN jack on the rear of this receiver.



2 Connect the IR IN jack of another component to the IR OUT jack on the rear of this receiver to link it to the IR receiver.

Please see the manual supplied with your IR receiver for the type of cable necessary for the connection.

- If you want to link a Pioneer component to the IR receiver, see *Operating other Pioneer components with this unit's sensor* on page 22 to connect to the **CONTROL** jacks instead of the **IR OUT** jack.

Operating other Pioneer components with this unit's sensor

Many Pioneer components have **SR CONTROL** jacks which can be used to link components together so that you can use just the remote sensor of one component. When you use a remote control, the control signal is passed along the chain to the appropriate component.

- If you want to control all your components using this receiver's remote control, see page 50.
- If you have connected a remote control to the **CONTROL IN** jack (using a mini-plug cable), you won't be able to control this unit using the remote sensor.

Important

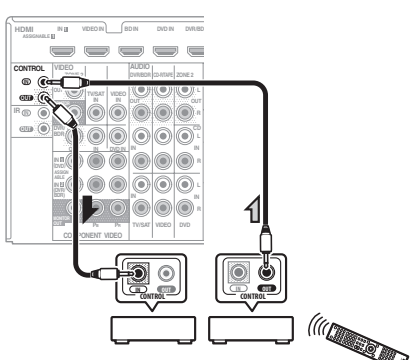
- Note that if you use this feature, *make sure that you also have at least one set of analog audio, video or HDMI jacks connected* to another component for grounding purposes.

1 Decide which component you want to use the remote sensor of.

When you want to control any component in the chain, this is the remote sensor at which you'll point the corresponding remote control.

2 Connect the CONTROL OUT jack of that component to the CONTROL IN jack of another Pioneer component.

Use a cable with a mono mini-plug on each end for the connection.



3 Continue the chain in the same way for as many components as you have.

Plugging in the receiver

Only plug in after you have connected all your components to this receiver, including the speakers.

CAUTION

- Handle the power cord by the plug part. Do not pull out the plug by tugging the cord, and never touch the power cord when your hands are wet, as this could cause a short circuit or electric shock. Do not place the unit, a piece of furniture, or other object on the power cord or pinch the cord in any other way. Never make a knot in the cord or tie it with other cables. The power cords should be routed so that they are not likely to be stepped on. A damaged power cord can cause a fire or give you an electric shock. Check the power cord once in a while. If you find it damaged, ask your nearest Pioneer authorized independent service company for a replacement.
- Do not use any power cord other than the one supplied with this unit.
- Do not use the supplied power cord for any purpose other than that described below.
- The receiver should be disconnected by removing the mains plug from the wall socket when not in regular use, e.g., when on vacation.

1 Plug the supplied power cord into the AC IN socket on the back of the receiver.

2 Plug the other end into a power outlet.

- After this receiver is connected to an AC outlet, a 2 second to 10 second HDMI initialization process begins. You cannot carry out any operations during this process. The **HDMI** indicator in the front panel display blinks during this process, and you can turn on this receiver once it has stopped blinking. When you set the **Control** with HDMI to **OFF**, you can skip this process. For details about the **Control** with HDMI feature, see *Control with HDMI function* on page 41 .

Basic Setup

Changing the OSD display language (OSD Language)

The language used on the Graphical User Interface screen can be changed.

- The explanations in these operating instructions are for when English is selected for the GUI screen.

1 Press ⏻ RECEIVER to switch on the receiver and your TV.

Make sure that the TV's video input is set to this receiver (for example, if you connected this receiver to the **VIDEO** jacks on your TV, make sure that the **VIDEO** input is now selected).

2 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ↑/↓/←/→ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

3 Select 'System Setup' from the Home Menu.

4 Select 'OSD Language' from the System Setup menu.

5 Select the desired language.

6 Select 'OK' to change the language.

The setting is completed and the **System Setup** menu reappears automatically.

Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)

The Full Auto MCACC Setup measures the acoustic characteristics of your listening area, taking into account ambient noise, speaker connection and speaker size, and tests for both channel delay and channel level. After you have set up the microphone provided with your system, the receiver uses the information from a series of test tones to optimize the speaker settings and equalization for your particular room.

Important

- Make sure the microphone and speakers are not moved during the Full Auto MCACC Setup.
- Using the Full Auto MCACC Setup will overwrite any existing settings for the MCACC preset you select.
- Before using the Full Auto MCACC Setup, the headphones should be disconnected.

CAUTION

- The test tones used in the Full Auto MCACC Setup are output at high volume.

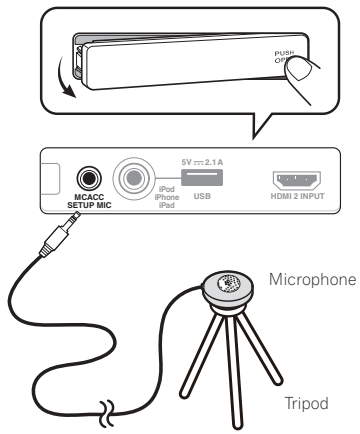
THX®

- THX is a trademark of THX Ltd., which may be registered in some jurisdictions. All rights reserved.

1 Press ⏻ RECEIVER to switch on the receiver and your TV.

Make sure that the TV's video input is set to this receiver.

2 Connect the microphone to the MCACC SETUP MIC jack on the front panel.



Make sure there are no obstacles between the speakers and the microphone.

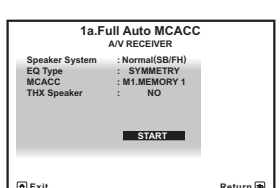
If you have a tripod, use it to place the microphone so that it's about ear level at your normal listening position. If you do not have a tripod, use some other object to install the microphone.

Install the microphone on a stable floor.

Placing the microphone on any of the following surfaces may make accurate measurement impossible:

- Sofas or other soft surfaces.
- High places such as tabletops and sofa tops.

The Full Auto MCACC display appears once the microphone is connected.



- If you leave the GUI screen for over five minutes, the screen saver will appear.

3 Select the parameters you want to set.

- When data measurement is taken, the reverb characteristics data (both before- and after-calibration) that this receiver had been storing will be overwritten.
- When measurement is taken of the reverb characteristics data other than **SYMMETRY**, the data are not measured after the correction. If you will need to measure after correcting data, take the measurement using the **EQ Professional** menu in the **Manual MCACC** setup (page 58).

If the speakers are connected using any setup other than **Normal(SB/FH)**, be sure to set **Speaker System** before the Full Auto MCACC Setup. See *Speaker system setting* on page 62 .

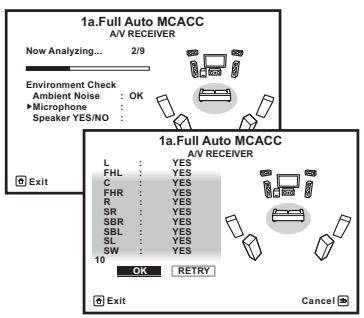
- **Speaker System** – Shows the current settings. When this is selected and **ENTER** is pressed, the speaker system selection screen appears. Select the proper speaker system, then press **RETURN** to return.
  If you are planning on bi-amping your front speakers, or setting up a separate speaker system in another room, read through *Speaker system setting* on page 62 and make sure to connect your speakers as necessary before continuing to step 4.
- **EQ Type** – This determines how the frequency balance is adjusted.
- **MCACC** – The six MCACC presets are used for storing surround sound settings for different listening positions. Simply choose an unused preset for now (you can rename it later in *Data Management* on page 61).
- **THX Speaker** – Select **YES** when using THX speakers (all speakers other than the front speakers are set to **SMALL**). In other cases, leave at **NO**.

4 Press RECEIVER then select START.

5 Follow the instructions on-screen.
Make sure the microphone is connected, and if you're using a subwoofer, make sure it is switched on and set to a comfortable volume level.

6 Wait for the test tones to finish, then confirm the speaker configuration in the GUI screen.
A progress report is displayed on-screen while the receiver outputs test tones to determine the speakers present in your setup. Try to be as quiet as possible while it's doing this.
If no operations are performed for 10 seconds while the speaker configuration check screen is being displayed, the Full Auto MCACC Setup will resume automatically. In this case, you don't need to select '**OK**' and press **ENTER** in step 7.

- With error messages (such as **Too much ambient noise!** or **Check microphone.**), select **RETRY** after checking for ambient noise (see *Problems when using the Auto MCACC Setup* on page 24) and verifying the mic connection. If there doesn't seem to be a problem, you can simply select **GO NEXT** and continue.



The configuration shown on-screen should reflect the actual speakers you have.

- If you see an **ERR** message (or the speaker configuration displayed isn't correct), there may be a problem with the speaker connection. If selecting **RETRY** doesn't work, turn off the power and check the speaker connections. If there doesn't seem to be a problem, you can simply use ⬆/⬇ to select the speaker and ⬅/➡ to change the setting and continue.
- If the speaker is not pointed to the microphone (listening position) or when using speakers that affect the phase (dipole speakers, reflective speakers, etc.), **Reverse Phase** may be displayed even if the speakers are properly connected.
  If **Reverse Phase** is displayed, the speaker's wiring (+ and –) may be inverted. Check the speaker connections.
  — If the connections were wrong, turn off the power, disconnect the power cord, then reconnect properly. After this, perform the Full Auto MCACC procedure again.
  — If the connections were right, select **GO NEXT** and continue.

7 Make sure 'OK' is selected, then press ENTER.
A progress report is displayed on-screen while the receiver outputs more test tones to determine the optimum receiver settings.
Again, try to be as quiet as possible while this is happening. It may take 3 to 10 minutes.

8 The Full Auto MCACC Setup procedure is completed and the Home Menu menu reappears automatically.
Be sure to disconnect the microphone from this receiver upon completion of the Full Auto MCACC Setup.
The settings made in the Full Auto MCACC Setup should give you excellent surround sound from your system, but it is also possible to adjust these settings manually using *The Advanced MCACC menu* on page 56 or *The System Setup and Other Setup menus* on page 62 .

- Depending on the characteristics of your room, sometimes identical speakers with cone sizes of around 12 cm will end up with different size settings. You can correct the setting manually using the *Manual speaker setup* on page 62 .
- The subwoofer distance setting may be farther than the actual distance from the listening position. This setting should be accurate (taking delay and room characteristics into account) and generally does not need to be changed.
- If Full Auto MCACC Setup measurement results are incorrect due to the interaction of the speakers and viewing environment, we recommend adjusting the settings manually.

Problems when using the Auto MCACC Setup

If the room environment is not optimal for the Auto MCACC Setup (too much background noise, echo off the walls, obstacles blocking the speakers from the microphone) the final settings may be incorrect. Check for household appliances (air conditioner, fridge, fan, etc.), that may be affecting the environment and switch them off if necessary. If there are any instructions showing in the front panel display, please follow them.

- Some older TVs may interfere with the operation of the microphone. If this seems to be happening, switch off the TV when doing the Auto MCACC Setup.

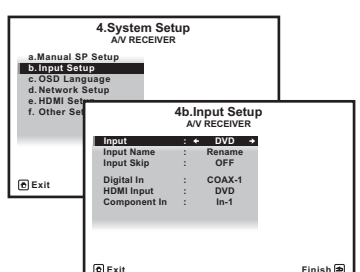
The Input Setup menu

You only need to make settings in the **Input Setup** menu if you didn't hook up your digital equipment according to the default settings (see *Input function default and possible settings* on page 25). In this case, you need to tell the receiver what equipment is hooked up to which terminal so the buttons on the remote control correspond to the components you've connected.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.
A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ⬆/⬇/⬅/➡ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

2 Select 'System Setup' from the Home Menu.

3 Select 'Input Setup' from the System Setup menu.



4 Select the input function that you want to set up.
The default names correspond with the names next to the terminals on the rear panel (such as **DVD** or **BD**) which, in turn, correspond with the names on the remote control.

5 Select the input(s) to which you've connected your component.

For example, if your DVD player only has an optical output, you will need to change the **DVD** input function's **Digital In** setting from **COAX-1** (default) to the optical input you've connected it to. The numbering (**OPT-1** to **OPT-2**) corresponds with the numbers beside the inputs on the back of the receiver.

6 When you're finished, proceed to the settings for other inputs.

There are optional settings in addition to the assignment of the input jacks:

- **Input Name** – You can choose to rename the input function for easier identification. Select **Rename** to do so, or **Default** to return to the system default.
- **Input Skip** – When set to **ON**, that input is skipped when selecting the input using **INPUT SELECT**. (**DVD** and other inputs can be still be selected directly with the input function buttons.)

7 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **System Setup** menu.

Input function default and possible settings

The terminals on the receiver generally correspond to the name of one of the input functions. If you have connected components to this receiver differently from (or in addition to) the defaults below, see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24 to tell the receiver how you've connected up. The dots (●) indicate possible assignments.

Input function	Input Terminals		
	Digital	HDMI	Component
DVD	COAX-1	(DVD)	IN 1
BD		(BD)	
TV/SAT	OPT-1	● <a, b>	●
DVR/BDR	OPT-2	(DVR/BDR)	IN 2
VIDEO <b>		(VIDEO)	●
VIDEO 1 <c>		(VIDEO 1)	●
VIDEO 2 <c>			
HDMI 1 <b>		IN 1	
HDMI 2 <b>		(HDMI 2)	
HOME MEDIA GALLERY			
iPod/USB			
CD	COAX-2 <b>		
CD-R/ TAPE	●		
TUNER			
ADAPTER PORT			

a With **Control** with HDMI set to **ON**, assignments cannot be made (see *Control with HDMI function* on page 41).

b VSX-1021 only

c VSX-921 only

Operation Mode Setup

This receiver is equipped with a great number of functions and settings. The Operation Mode feature is provided for users who find it difficult to master all these functions and settings. One of two settings can be selected for the **Operation Mode**: **Expert** and **Basic**.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ⬆/⬇/⬅/➡ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

2 Select 'Operation Mode Setup' from the Home Menu.

3 Select the Operation Mode setting you want.

- **Expert** (default) – Users can set all the functions by themselves.
- **Basic** – The number of operable functions is restricted, and functions whose operations are restricted are automatically set to achieve the Pioneer-recommended sound and picture quality. The functions that can be operated are shown below. They can be set as necessary by referring to the operating instructions.

Operable functions/ items	Descriptions	Page
HOME MENU		
Full Auto MCACC	Makes high precision sound field settings easily.	23
Input Name	Input names can be changed as desired for easier use.	24
Input Skip	Inputs not being used are skipped (not displayed).	24
Software Update	Updates to the latest version of the software.	66
Network Information	Checks the receiver's IP address.	65
Pairing Bluetooth Setup	Pairs with a Bluetooth device using AS-BT100 or AS-BT200.	31
Audio Parameters		
MCACC (MCACC preset)	Selects your favorite MCACC preset memory.	44
DELAY (Sound Delay)	Adjusts the delay time of the overall sound.	44
S.RTRV (Auto Sound Retriever)	Plays compressed sound with high sound quality.	44
DUAL (Dual Mono)	Dual monaural audio setting.	44
V.SB (Virtual Surround Back)	Creates a virtual surround back channel sound for playback.	44
V.HEIGHT (Virtual Height)	Creates a virtual height channel sound for playback.	44
Other functions		
INPUT SELECT (**INPUT SELECTOR**)	Switches the input.	27
MASTER VOLUME +/–, **MUTE**	Use to set the listening volume.	27
LISTENING MODE	Only Pioneer-recommended modes can be selected.	33
PQLS	Plays using the PQLS function.	42
PHASE CTRL (Phase Control)	Plays with phase shifting in the low range corrected.	34

Operable functions/ items	Descriptions	Page
SOUND RETRIEVER AIR	Switches the input to **ADAPTER PORT** and plays compressed sound with high sound quality.	32
iPod iPhone iPad DIRECT CONTROL	Switches the input to **iPod/ USB** and sets the mode allowing operation from the iPod.	28

4 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **Home Menu**.

Basic playback

Playing a source

Here are the basic instructions for playing a source (such as a DVD disc) with your home theater system.

1 Switch on your system components and receiver.

Start by switching on the playback component (for example a DVD player), your TV and subwoofer (if you have one), then the receiver (press ⏻ **RECEIVER**).

Make sure that the TV's video input is set to this receiver.

2 Select the input function you want to play.

You can use the input function buttons on the remote control, **INPUT SELECT**, or the front panel **INPUT SELECTOR** dial.

- If you need to manually switch the input signal type press **SIGNAL SEL** (page 34).

3 Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode.

4 Press AUTO/ALC/DIRECT (AUTO SURR/ALC/STREAM DIRECT) to select 'AUTO SURROUND' and start playback of the source.

If you're playing a Dolby Digital or DTS surround sound source, you should hear surround sound. If you are playing a stereo source, you will only hear sound from the front left/right speakers in the default listening mode.

- You may need to check the digital audio output settings on your DVD player or digital satellite receiver. It should be set to output Dolby Digital, DTS and 88.2 kHz / 96 kHz PCM (2 channel) audio, and if there is an MPEG audio option, set this to convert the MPEG audio to PCM.
- See also *Listening to your system* on page 33 for information on different ways of listening to sources.

It is possible to check on the front panel display whether or not multi-channel playback is being performed properly. For details, see *Auto Surround, ALC and Stream Direct with different input signal formats* on page 79 .

When using a surround back speaker, **DD+PLIIx MOVIE** is displayed when playing Dolby Digital signals, and **DTS+Neo:6** is displayed when playing DTS 5.1-channel signals. If the display does not correspond to the input signal and listening mode, check the connections and settings.

5 Use the MASTER VOLUME +/– to adjust the volume level.

Turn down the volume of your TV so that all sound is coming from the speakers connected to this receiver.

Playing a source with HDMI connection

● **Use INPUT SELECT to select the input function connected to the receiver's HDMI input terminals.**

You can also perform the same operation by using the **INPUT SELECTOR** dial on the front panel or by pressing **HDMI** on the remote control repeatedly.

- Set the **HDMI** parameter in *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 to **THROUGH** if you want to hear HDMI audio output from your TV (no sound will be heard from this receiver).
- If the video signal does not appear on your TV, try adjusting the resolution settings on your component or display. Note that some components (such as video game units) have resolutions that may not be converted. In this case, use an analog video connection.

Playing an iPod

This receiver has the **iPod iPhone iPad USB** terminal that will allow you to control playback of audio content from your iPod using the controls of this receiver.

- This receiver is compatible with the audio and video of the iPod nano (audio only for the iPod nano 1G/2G), iPod fifth generation (audio only), iPod classic, iPod touch, iPhone and iPad. However, some of the functions may be restricted for some models. The receiver is not compatible with the iPod shuffle.
- This receiver has been developed and tested for the software version of iPod/iPhone/iPad indicated on the website of Pioneer (http://pioneer.jp/homeav/support/ios/eu/).
- Installing software versions other than indicated on the website of Pioneer to your iPod/iPhone/iPad may result in incompatibility with this receiver.
- iPod, iPhone and iPad are licensed for reproduction of non-copyrighted materials or materials the user is legally permitted to reproduce.
- Features such as the equalizer cannot be controlled using this receiver, and we recommend switching the equalizer off before connecting.
- Pioneer cannot under any circumstances accept responsibility for any direct or indirect loss arising from any inconvenience or loss of recorded material resulting from the iPod failure.
- When listening to a track on the iPod in the main zone, it is possible to control the sub zone, but not to listen to a different track in the sub zone from the one playing in the main zone.

1 Press ⏻ RECEIVER to switch on the receiver and your TV.

See *Connecting an iPod* on page 20 .

- It is also possible to operate the iPod on the iPod itself, without using the TV screen. For details, see *Switching the iPod controls* on page 28 .

2 Press iPod USB on the remote control to switch the receiver to the iPod/USB.

Loading appears in the GUI screen while the receiver verifies the connection and retrieves data from the iPod.

When the display shows the **iPod Top** menu you're ready to play music from the iPod.

- The controls of your iPod will be inoperable when connected to this receiver.

Playing back audio files stored on an iPod

To navigate songs on your iPod, you can take advantage of the GUI screen of your TV connected to this receiver. You can also control all operations for music in the front panel display of this receiver.

- Note that characters that cannot be displayed on this receiver are displayed as #.
- This feature is not available for photos on your iPod. To display photos, switch iPod operation to the iPod (see *Switching the iPod controls* on page 28).

Finding what you want to play

When your iPod is connected to this receiver, you can browse songs stored on your iPod by playlist, artist name, album name, song name, genre or composer, similar to using your iPod directly.

1 Use ↑/↓ to select 'Music' from the iPod Top menu.

2 Use ↑/↓ to select a category, then press ENTER to browse that category.

- To return to the previous level any time, press **RETURN**.

3 Use ↑/↓ to browse the selected category (e.g., albums).

- Use ←/→ to move to previous/next levels.

4 Continue browsing until you arrive at what you want to play, then press ► to start playback.

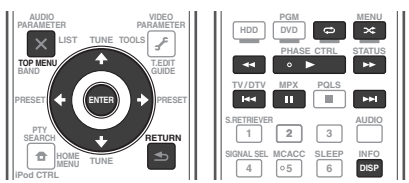
Note

- You can play all of the songs in a particular category by selecting the **All** item at the top of each category list. For example, you can play all the songs by a particular artist.

Basic playback controls

This receiver's remote control buttons can be used for basic playback of files stored on an iPod.

- Press **iPod USB** to switch the remote control to the iPod/USB operation mode.



- During Audiobook playback, press ↑/↓ to switch the playback speed: Faster ⟷ Normal ⟷ Slower.

Switching the iPod controls

You can switch over the iPod controls between the iPod and the receiver.

- You cannot use this function, when an iPod of fifth generation or iPod nano of first generation is connected.

1 Press iPod CTRL to switch the iPod controls.

This enables operation and display on your iPod, and this receiver's remote control and GUI screen become inactive.

2 Press iPod CTRL again to switch back to the receiver controls.

Note

- Change the receiver's input to the iPod in one action by pressing the **iPod iPhone iPad DIRECT CONTROL** button on the front panel to enable iPod operations on the iPod.

Playing a USB device

It is possible to play files using the USB interface on the front of this receiver.

- Compatible USB devices include external magnetic hard drives, portable flash memory drives (particularly key drives) and digital audio players (MP3 players) of format FAT16/32.
- Pioneer cannot guarantee compatibility (operation and/or bus power) with all USB mass storage devices and assumes no responsibility for any loss of data that may occur when connected to this receiver.

1 Press ⏻ RECEIVER to switch on the receiver and your TV.

See *Connecting a USB device* on page 21 .

- Make sure the receiver is in standby when disconnecting the USB device.

2 Press iPod USB on the remote control to switch the receiver to the iPod/USB.

Loading appears in the GUI screen as this receiver starts recognizing the USB device connected. When the display shows the **USB Top** menu you're ready to play from the USB device.

Note

If an **Over Current** message lights in the display, the power requirements of the USB device are too high for this receiver. Try following the points below:

- Switch the receiver off, then on again.
- Reconnect the USB device with the receiver switched off.
- Use a dedicated AC adapter (supplied with the device) for USB power.

If this doesn't remedy the problem, it is likely your USB device is incompatible.

Playing back audio files stored on a USB memory device

The maximum number of levels that you can select in Step 2 (below) is 8. Also, you can display and play back up to 30 000 folders and files within a USB memory device.

- Note that non-Roman characters in the playlist are displayed as #.

1 Use ↑/↓ to select 'Music' from the USB Top menu.

2 Use ↑/↓ to select a folder, then press ENTER to browse that folder.

- To return to the previous level any time, press **RETURN**.

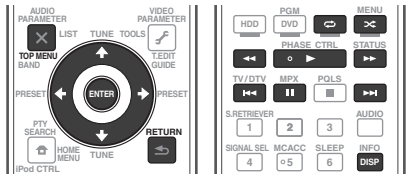
3 Continue browsing until you arrive at what you want to play, then press ► to start playback.

- Copyrighted audio files cannot be played back on this receiver.
- DRM-protected audio files cannot be played back on this receiver.

Basic playback controls

This receiver's remote control buttons can be used for basic playback of files stored on USB memory devices.

- Press **iPod USB** to switch the remote control to the iPod/USB operation mode.



Playing back photo files stored on a USB memory device

- Photo files cannot be played in the sub zone.

1 Use ↑/↓ to select 'Photos' from the USB Top menu.

2 Use ↑/↓ to select a folder, then press ENTER to browse that folder.

- To return to the previous level any time, press **RETURN**.

3 Continue browsing until you arrive at what you want to play, then press ► to start playback.

The selected content is displayed in full screen and a slideshow starts.

After a slideshow launches, pressing **ENTER** toggles between play and pause (only when **Theme** on the **Slideshow Setup** is set to **Normal (OFF)**).

- If the slideshow is left in the pause mode for five minutes, the list screen reappears.

Basic playback controls

Button(s)	What it does
ENTER, ►	Starts displaying a photo and playing a slideshow.
RETURN, ←	Stops the player and returns to the previous menu.
⏮ <a>	Displays the previous photo content.
⏭ <a>	Displays the next photo content.

Button(s)	What it does
II <a>	Pauses/unpauses the slideshow.
DISP <a>	Displays the photo information.

a You can only use this button when **Theme** on the **Slideshow Setup** is set to **Normal (OFF)**.

Slideshow Setup

Make the various settings for playing slideshows of photo files here.

1 Use ↑/↓ to select 'Slideshow Setup' from the USB Top menu.

2 Select the setting you want.

- **Theme** – Add various effects to the slideshow.
- **Interval** – Set the interval for switching the photos. This may not be available depending on the **Theme** setting.
- **BGM** – Play music files stored on the USB device while displaying photos.
- **Music Select** – Select the folder containing the music files to be played when **BGM** is set to **ON**.

3 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **USB Top** menu.

About playable file formats

The USB function of this receiver supports the following file formats. Note that some file formats are not available for playback although they are listed as playable file formats.

Music files

Category	Extension		Stream	
MP3 <a>	.mp3	MPEG-1, 2, 2.5 Audio Layer-3	Sampling frequency	8 kHz to 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit
			Channel	2 ch
			Bitrate	8 kbps to 320 kbps
			VBR/CBR	Supported/Supported
WAV	.wav	LPCM	Sampling frequency	32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	8 bit, 16 bit
			Channel	2 ch, Monaural
WMA	.wma	WMA8/9 <b>	Sampling frequency	8 kHz to 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit
			Channel	2 ch
			Bitrate	8 kbps to 320 kbps
			VBR/CBR	Supported/Supported

a *"MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson multimedia."*

b Files encoded using Windows Media Codec 9 may be playable but some parts of the specification are not supported; specifically, Pro, Lossless, Voice.

Photo files

Category	Extension		
JPEG	.jpg .jpeg .jpe .jif .jfif	Format	Meeting the following conditions: • Baseline JPEG format (including files recorded in Exif/DCF format) • Y:Cb:Cr - 4:4:4, 4:2:2 or 4:2:0
		Resolution	30 to 8184 pixels vertical, 40 to 8184 pixels horizontal

Listening to the radio

The following steps show you how to tune in to FM and AM radio broadcasts using the automatic (search) and manual (step) tuning functions. If you already know the frequency of the station you want, see Tuning directly to a station below. Once you are tuned to a station you can memorize the frequency for recall later-see *Saving station presets* on page 30 for more on how to do this.

1 Press TUNER to select the tuner.

2 Use BAND to change the band (FM or AM), if necessary.

3 Tune to a station.

There are three ways to do this:

- **Automatic tuning** – To search for stations in the currently selected band, press and hold **TUNE** ⬆/⬇ for about a second. The receiver will start searching for the next station, stopping when it has found one. Repeat to search for other stations.
- **Manual tuning** – To change the frequency one step at a time, press **TUNE** ⬆/⬇.
- **High speed tuning** – Press and hold **TUNE** ⬆/⬇ for high speed tuning. Release the button at the frequency you want.

Improving FM sound

If the **TUNED** or **STEREO** indicator doesn't light when tuning to an FM station because the signal is weak, press **MPX** to switch the receiver into mono reception mode. This should improve the sound quality and allow you to enjoy the broadcast.

Using Neural Surround

This feature uses Neural Surround™ technologies to achieve optimal surround sound from FM radio.

- While listening to FM radio, press **AUTO/ALC/DIRECT** for Neural Surround.
- The **Neural Surround** mode can be selected also with **STANDARD**.

Tuning directly to a station

1 Press TUNER to select the tuner.

2 Use BAND to change the band (FM or AM), if necessary.

3 Press D.ACCESS (Direct Access).

4 Use the number buttons to enter the frequency of the radio station.

For example, to tune to **106.00** (FM), press **1**, **0**, **6**, **0**, **0**.

If you make a mistake halfway through, press **D.ACCESS** twice to cancel the frequency and start over.

Saving station presets

If you often listen to a particular radio station, it's convenient to have the receiver store the frequency for easy recall whenever you want to listen to that station. This saves the effort of manually tuning in each time. This receiver can memorize up to 63 stations, stored in seven banks, or classes (A to G) of 9 stations each.

1 Tune to a station you want to memorize.

See *Listening to the radio* on page 30 for more on this.

2 Press T.EDIT (TUNER EDIT).

The display shows **PRESET MEMORY**, then a blinking memory class.

3 Press CLASS to select one of the seven classes, then press PRESET ⬅/➡ to select the station preset you want.

You can also use the number buttons to select a station preset.

4 Press ENTER.

After pressing **ENTER**, the preset class and number stop blinking and the receiver stores the station.

Listening to station presets

1 Press TUNER to select the tuner.

2 Press CLASS to select the class in which the station is stored.

Press repeatedly to cycle through classes A to G.

3 Press PRESET ⬅/➡ to select the station preset you want.

- You can also use the number buttons on the remote control to recall the station preset.

Naming station presets

For easier identification, you can name your station presets.

1 Choose the station preset you want to name.

See *Listening to station presets* on page 30 for how to do this.

2 Press T.EDIT (TUNER EDIT).

The display shows **PRESET NAME**, then a blinking cursor at the first character position.

3 Input the name you want.

Use ⬆/⬇ to select a character, ⬅/➡ to set the position, and **ENTER** to confirm your selection.

Note

- To erase a station name, simply repeat steps 1 to 3 and input eight spaces instead of a name.
- Once you have named a station preset, you can press **DISP** when listening to a station to switch the display between name and frequency.

An introduction to RDS

Radio Data System (RDS) is a system used by most FM radio stations to provide listeners with various kinds of information-the name of the station and the kind of show they're broadcasting, for example.

One feature of RDS is that you can search by type of program. For example, you can search for a station that's broadcasting a show with the program type, **JAZZ**.

You can search the following program types:

- In addition, there are two other program types, **TEST** and **NONE**. You can't search for these.

NEWS - News	**FINANCE** - Stock market reports, commerce, trading, etc.
AFFAIRS - Current Affairs	**CHILDREN** - Programs for children
INFO - General Information	**SOCIAL** - Social affairs
SPORT - Sport	**RELIGION** - Programs concerning religion
EDUCATE - Educational	**PHONE IN** - Public expressing their views by phone
DRAMA - Radio plays, etc.	**TRAVEL** - Holiday-type travel rather than traffic announcements
CULTURE - National or regional culture, theater, etc.	**LEISURE** - Leisure interests and hobbies
SCIENCE - Science and technology	**JAZZ** - Jazz
VARIED - Usually talk-based material, such as quiz shows or interviews.	**COUNTRY** - Country music
POP M - Pop music	**NATION M** - Popular music in a language other than English
ROCK M - Rock music	**OLDIES** - Popular music from the '50s and '60s
EASY M - Easy listening	**FOLK M** - Folk music
LIGHT M - 'Light' classical music	**DOCUMENT** - Documentary
CLASSICS - 'Serious' classical music	
OTHER M - Music not fitting above categories	
WEATHER - Weather reports	

Searching for RDS programs

One of the most useful features of RDS is the ability to search for a particular kind of radio program. You can search for any of the program types listed above.

1 Press TUNER to select the FM band.

- RDS is only possible in the FM band.

2 Press PTY SEARCH.

PTY SEARCH shows in the display.

3 Press PRESET ⬅/➡ to select the program type you want to hear.

4 Press ENTER to search for the program type.

The system starts searching through all frequencies for a match. When it finds one, the search stops and the station plays for five seconds.

5 If you want to keep listening to the station, press ENTER within the five seconds.

If you don't press **ENTER**, searching resumes. If **NO PTY** is displayed it means the tuner couldn't find that program type at the time of the search.

- RDS searches all frequencies. If the program type could not be found among all the frequencies, **NO PTY** is displayed.

Displaying RDS information

Use the **DISP** button to display the different types of RDS information available.

- If any noise is picked up while displaying the RT scroll, some characters may be displayed incorrectly.
- If you see **NO RT DATA** in the RT display, it means no RT data is sent from the broadcast station.
- If you see **NO PS DATA** in the PS display, it means no PS data can be received.
- If you see **NO PTY DATA** in the PTY display, it means no PTY data can be received.

● **Press DISP for RDS information.**

Each press changes the display as follows:

- Radio Text (**RT**) – Messages sent by the radio station. For example, a talk radio station may provide a phone number as RT.
- Program Service Name (**PS**) – The name of the radio station.
- Program Type (**PTY**) – This indicates the kind of program currently being broadcast.
- Current tuner frequency.

Bluetooth ADAPTER for Wireless Enjoyment of Music

Bluetooth wireless technology enabled device: cell phone
Bluetooth wireless technology enabled device: Digital music player
Device not equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology: Digital music player + Bluetooth audio transmitter (sold commercially)
Music data
Bluetooth® ADAPTER
This receiver
Remote control operation

Wireless music play

When the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER (AS-BT100 or AS-BT200) is connected to this unit, a product equipped with *Bluetooth* wireless technology (portable cell phone, digital music player, etc.) can be used to listen to music wirelessly. Also, by using a commercially available transmitter supporting *Bluetooth* wireless technology, you can listen to music on a device not equipped with *Bluetooth* wireless technology. The AS-BT100 and AS-BT200 models supports SCMS-T contents protection, so music can also be enjoyed on devices equipped with SCMS-T type *Bluetooth* wireless technology.

Remote control operation

The remote control supplied with this unit allows you to play and stop media, and perform other operations.

- It must be necessary that the *Bluetooth* wireless technology enabled device supports AVRCP profiles.
- Remote control operations cannot be guaranteed for all *Bluetooth* wireless technology enabled devices.

Pairing the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER and *Bluetooth* wireless technology device

"Pairing" must be done before you start playback of *Bluetooth* wireless technology content using the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER. Make sure to perform pairing the first time you operate the system or any time pairing data is cleared. The pairing step is necessary to register the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device to enable *Bluetooth* communications. For more details, see also the operating instructions of your *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.

- Pairing is required when you first use the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device and *Bluetooth* ADAPTER.
- To enable *Bluetooth* communication, pairing should be done with both your system and *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.
- If the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device's security code is "0000", there is no need to make the security code setting on the receiver. Press **ADPT** to set the **ADAPTER PORT** input, then conduct the pairing operation on the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device. If pairing is successful, there is no need to performing the pairing operation below.

- When using the AS-BT200 only: This unit complies with *Bluetooth* Specifications Ver. 2.1. When this unit and another device equipped with *Bluetooth* wireless technology both comply with *Bluetooth* Specification Ver. 2.1, pairing of the two may be possible without the need for inputting a password.
  In this case, a passcode may be displayed on this receiver and on the device equipped with *Bluetooth* wireless technology. If this happens, check that the same passcode is displayed on this receiver and the device equipped with *Bluetooth* wireless technology, then select **YES** with the ⬅ and ➡ keys and press **ENTER**. After this, also perform the connection operation on the *Bluetooth* device to be connected. If the passcode does not match the code displayed on the *Bluetooth* device to be connected, select **NO** to cancel pairing, then try starting over.
  Press **ADPT** to set the **ADAPTER PORT** input, then conduct the pairing operation on the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.
  If pairing is successful, there is no need to performing the pairing operation below.
- Pair one unit at a time.
- When connecting this receiver by *Bluetooth* connections with a device equipped with the *Bluetooth* function to listen to music, do not connect any devices other than this receiver by *Bluetooth* connection to the *Bluetooth*-equipped device. If a *Bluetooth* connection is already established with a device other than this receiver, disconnect the other device before connecting this receiver.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

2 Select 'System Setup', then press ENTER.

3 Select 'Other Setup', then press ENTER.

4 Select 'Pairing Bluetooth Device', then press ENTER.

5 Select the 'Passcode' setting you want.
Select the same passcode as the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device you wish to connect.

- **0000/1234/8888** – Select the passcode from these options. These are the passcodes that can be used in most cases.
- **Others** – Select to use a passcode other than those mentioned above.

6 If you selected 'Others' in step 5, enter the passcode.
Use ⬆/⬇ to select a number and ⬅/➡ to move the cursor.

7 Follow the instructions displayed on the GUI screen to conduct pairing with the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.
Switch on the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device that you want to make pair, place it near the receiver and set it to the pairing mode.

8 Check to see that the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER is detected by the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.
When the Bluetooth wireless technology device is connected:
CONNECTED appears in the receiver display.

- The system can display alphanumeric characters only. Other characters may not be displayed correctly.

When the Bluetooth wireless technology device is not connected:
Go back to the passcode setting in step 5. In this case, perform the connection operation from the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.

9 From the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device list, select *Bluetooth* ADAPTER and enter the Passcode selected in step 5.

- The passcode may in some cases be referred to as PASSKEY or PIN code.

Listening to music contents of a *Bluetooth* wireless technology device with your system

1 Press ADPT on the remote control to switch the receiver to ADAPTER PORT input.

- The **ADAPTER PORT** input can also be selected by pressing **SOUND RETRIEVER AIR** on the receiver. In this case, the optimum listening mode (**SOUND RETRIEVER AIR**) is selected automatically.
- When the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER is not plugged into the **ADAPTER PORT**, **NO ADAPTER** will be displayed if **ADAPTER PORT** input is selected.

2 From the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device, perform the operation to connect to the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER.

3 Start playback of music contents stored on the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.
This receiver's remote control buttons can be used for basic playback of files stored on *Bluetooth* wireless technology devices.

- *Bluetooth* wireless technology device should be compatible with AVRCP profile.
- Depending on the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device you use, operation may differ from what is shown in the remote control buttons.

4 While listening to a source, set the remote control to the receiver operation mode, then press ADV SURR repeatedly to select SOUND RETRIEVER AIR.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by PIONEER CORPORATION is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Listening to your system

Important

- The listening modes and many features described in this section may not be available depending on the current source, settings and status of the receiver.

Auto playback

There are many ways to listen back to sources using this receiver, but the simplest, most direct listening option is the Auto Surround feature. The receiver automatically detects what kind of source you're playing and selects multichannel or stereo playback as necessary.

● **While listening to a source, press AUTO/ALC/DIRECT (AUTO SURR/ALC/STREAM DIRECT) for auto playback of a source.**

AUTO SURROUND shows briefly in the display before showing the decoding or playback format. Check the digital format indicators in the front panel display to see how the source is being processed.

- If the source is Dolby Digital, DTS, or Dolby Surround encoded, the proper decoding format will automatically be selected and shows in the display.
- When listening to the FM radio, the Neural Surround feature is selected automatically (see *Using Neural Surround* on page 30 for more on this).
- When listening to the **ADAPTER PORT** input, the **SOUND RETRIEVER AIR** feature is selected automatically.

ALC – In the Auto level control (**ALC**) mode, this receiver equalizes playback sound levels. Also, the low and high frequency sounds, dialogs, surround effects, etc., that are difficult to hear when the volume is low are adjusted to be optimal for the volume level. This mode is particularly optimum when listening at night.

Note

- When **ALC** is selected, the effect level can be adjusted using the **EFFECT** parameter in *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Listening in surround sound

Using this receiver, you can listen to any source in surround sound. However, the options available will depend on your speaker setup and the type of source you're listening to.

Standard surround sound

The following modes provide basic surround sound for stereo and multichannel sources.

● **While listening to a source, press STANDARD (STANDARD SURROUND).**

If necessary, press repeatedly to select a listening mode.

- If the source is Dolby Digital, DTS, or Dolby Surround encoded, the proper decoding format will automatically be selected and shows in the display.
- If the surround back speakers are not connected, **Pro Logic IIx** becomes **Pro Logic II** (5.1 channel sound).

With two channel sources, you can select from:

- **Pro Logic IIx MOVIE** – Up to 7.1 channel sound (surround back), especially suited to movie sources
- **Pro Logic IIx MUSIC** – Up to 7.1 channel sound (surround back), especially suited to music sources
- **Pro Logic IIx GAME** – Up to 7.1 channel sound (surround back), especially suited to video games
- **PRO LOGIC** – 4.1 channel surround sound (sound from the surround speakers is mono)
- **Pro Logic IIz HEIGHT** – Up to 7.1 channel sound (front height)
- **WIDE SURROUND MOVIE** – Up to 7.1 channel sound (front wide), especially suited to movie sources
- **WIDE SURROUND MUSIC** – Up to 7.1 channel sound (front wide), especially suited to music sources
- **Neo:6 CINEMA** – 7.1 channel sound (surround back), especially suited to movie sources
- **Neo:6 MUSIC** – 7.1 channel sound (surround back), especially suited to music sources
- **Neural Surround** – Up to 7.1 channel sound (surround back), especially suited to music sources
- **STEREO** – The audio is heard with your sound settings and you can still use the audio options.

With multichannel sources, if you have connected surround back, front height or front wide speakers, you can select (according to format):

- **Pro Logic IIx MOVIE** – See above
- **Pro Logic IIx MUSIC** – See above
- **Dolby Digital EX** – Creates surround back channel sound for 5.1 channel sources and provides pure decoding for 6.1 channel sources (like Dolby Digital Surround EX)
- **DTS-ES** – Allows you to hear 6.1 channel playback with DTS-ES encoded sources
- **DTS Neo:6** – Allows you to hear 6.1 channel playback with DTS encoded sources
- **Neo:6** – Allows you to hear 6.1 channel playback
- **Pro Logic IIz HEIGHT** – See above
- **WIDE SURROUND MOVIE** – See above
- **WIDE SURROUND MUSIC** – See above
- **STEREO** – See above
- Straight Decode – Plays back without the effects above.

Note

- When listening sources in **Pro Logic IIz HEIGHT** mode, you can also adjust the **H.GAIN** effect (see *Setting the Audio options* on page 44).
- When listening to 2-channel sources in Dolby Pro Logic IIx Music mode, there are three further parameters you can adjust: **C.WIDTH**,**DIMENSION** and **PANORAMA**. See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 to adjust them.
- When listening to 2-channel sources in Neo:6 Cinema or Neo:6 Music mode, you can also adjust the center image effect (see *Setting the Audio options* on page 44).
- **Neural Surround** can be selected for 2-channel signals for which the input signal is PCM (48 kHz or less), Dolby Digital, DTS or analog 2-channel sources.
- The stereo mode can also be selected by pressing the **STEREO** button on the remote control.
- When listening through headphones, you can select **STEREO** mode only.

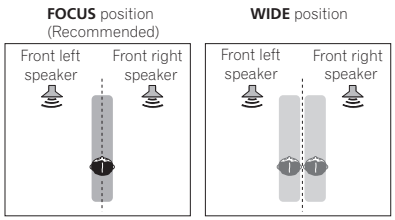
Using the Advanced surround effects

The Advanced surround effects can be used for a variety of additional surround sound effects. Most Advanced Surround modes are designed to be used with film soundtracks, but some modes are also suited for music sources. Try different settings with various soundtracks to see which you like.

● **Press ADV SURR (ADVANCED SURROUND) repeatedly to select a listening mode.**

- **ACTION** – Designed for action movies with dynamic soundtracks
- **DRAMA** – Designed for movies with lots of dialog
- **SCI-FI** – Designed for science fiction with lots of special effects
- **MONO FILM** – Creates surround sound from mono soundtracks

- **ENT.SHOW** – Suitable for musical sources
- **EXPANDED** – Creates an extra wide stereo field
- **TV SURROUND** – Provides surround sound for both mono and stereo TV sources
- **ADVANCED GAME** – Suitable for video games
- **SPORTS** – Suitable for sports programs
- **CLASSICAL** – Gives a large concert hall-type sound
- **ROCK/POP** – Creates a live concert sound for rock and/or pop music
- **UNPLUGGED** – Suitable for acoustic music sources
- **EXT.STEREO** – Gives multichannel sound to a stereo source, using all of your speakers
- **F.S.SURR FOCUS** – Use to provide a rich surround sound effect directed to the center of where the front left and right speakers sound projection area converges.
- **F.S.SURR WIDE** – Use to provide a surround sound effect to a wider area than **FOCUS** mode.



- **SOUND RETRIEVER AIR** – Suitable for listening to the sound from a *Bluetooth* wireless technology device. The **SOUND RETRIEVER AIR** listening mode can only selected when the **ADAPTER PORT** input or listening through headphones.
- **PHONES SURR** – When listening through headphones, you can still get the effect of overall surround.

Note

- When an Advanced Surround listening mode is selected, the effect level can be adjusted using the **EFFECT** parameter in *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 . However, with **F.S.SURR FOCUS**, **F.S.SURR WIDE** and **SOUND RETRIEVER AIR**, the effect level cannot be adjusted.
- The Front Stage Surround Advance (**F.S.SURR FOCUS** and **F.S.SURR WIDE**) function allows you to create natural surround sound effects using just the front speakers and the subwoofer.

Using Stream Direct

Use the Stream Direct modes when you want to hear the truest possible reproduction of a source. All unnecessary signal processing is bypassed, and you're left with the pure analog or digital sound source.
Processing differs depending on the input signal and whether or not surround back speakers are connected. For details, see *Auto Surround, ALC and Stream Direct with different input signal formats* on page 79 .

● **While listening to a source, press AUTO/ALC/DIRECT (AUTO SURR/ALC/STREAM DIRECT) to select the mode you want.**

Check the digital format indicators in the front panel display to see how the source is being processed.

- **AUTO SURROUND** – See *Auto playback* on page 33 .
- **ALC** – Listening in Auto level control mode (page 33).
- **DIRECT** – Plays back sound from the source with the least modification next to **PURE DIRECT**. With **DIRECT**, the only modifications added to **PURE DIRECT** playback are calibration of the sound field by the MCACC system and the Phase Control effect.
- **PURE DIRECT** – Plays back unmodified sound from source with only minimal digital treatment. No sound is output from the Speaker B in this mode.

Note

- When listening through headphones, you can select **ALC** or **PURE DIRECT** mode only.

Selecting MCACC presets

- Default setting: **MEMORY 1**

If you have calibrated your system for different listening positions, you can switch between settings to suit the kind of source you're listening to and where you're sitting (for example, watching movies from a sofa, or playing a video game close to the TV).

1 Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode.

2 While listening to a source, press MCACC.

Press repeatedly to select one of the six MCACC presets. See *Data Management* on page 61 to check and manage your current settings.

- These settings have no effect when headphones are connected.
- You can also press ⬅/➡ to select the MCACC preset.

Choosing the input signal

On this receiver, it is possible to switch the input signals for the different inputs as described below.

- This receiver can only play back Dolby Digital, PCM (32 kHz to 192 kHz) and DTS (including DTS 96/24) digital signal formats. The compatible signals via the HDMI terminals are: Dolby Digital, DTS, PCM (32 kHz to 192 kHz), Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS-EXPRESS, DTS-HD Master Audio and SACD.
- You may get digital noise when an LD, CD, DVD or BD player compatible with DTS is playing an analog signal. To prevent noise, make the proper digital connections (page 14) and set the signal input to **DIGITAL**.
- Some DVD players don't output DTS signals. For more details, refer to the instruction manual supplied with your DVD player.

1 Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode.

2 Press SIGNAL SEL to select the input signal corresponding to the source component.

Each press cycles through the options as follows:

- **AUTO** – The receiver selects the first available signal in the following order: **HDMI**; **DIGITAL**; **ANALOG**.
- **ANALOG** – Selects an analog signal.
- **DIGITAL** – Selects an optical or coaxial digital signal.
- **HDMI** – Selects an HDMI signal.
  - — When the **HDMI** audio output parameter is set to **THROUGH**, the sound will be heard through your TV, not from this receiver.

When set to **DIGITAL**, **HDMI** or **AUTO** (only selected **DIGITAL** or **HDMI**), the indicators light according to the signal being decoded (see *Display* on page 8).

Better sound using Phase Control

This receiver's Phase Control feature uses phase correction measures to make sure your sound source arrives at the listening position in phase, preventing unwanted distortion and/or coloring of the sound.

Phase Control technology provides coherent sound reproduction through the use of phase matching for an optimal sound image. The default setting is on and we recommend leaving Phase Control switched on for all sound sources.

1 Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode.

2 Press PHASE CTRL (PHASE CONTROL) to switch on phase correction.

The **PHASE CONTROL** indicator on the front panel lights.

Note

- Phase matching is a very important factor in achieving proper sound reproduction. If two waveforms are 'in phase', they crest and trough together, resulting in increased amplitude, clarity and presence of the sound signal. If a crest of a wave meets a trough, then the sound will be 'out of phase' and an unreliable sound image will be produced.
- The **PHASE CONTROL** feature is available even when the headphones are plugged in.
- If your subwoofer has a phase control switch, set it to the plus (+) sign (or 0º). However, the effect you can actually feel when **PHASE CONTROL** is set to **ON** on this receiver depends on the type of your subwoofer. Set your subwoofer to maximize the effect. It is also recommended you try changing the orientation or the place of your subwoofer.
- Set the built-in lowpass filter switch of your subwoofer to off. If this cannot be done on your subwoofer, set the cutoff frequency to a higher value.
- If the speaker distance is not properly set, you may not have a maximized **PHASE CONTROL** effect.
- The **PHASE CONTROL** mode cannot be set to **ON** in the following cases:
  - —When the **PURE DIRECT** mode is switched on.
  - —When the **HDMI** audio output parameter is set to **THROUGH** in Setting the *Audio options* on page 44 .

Playback with HOME MEDIA GALLERY inputs

Enjoying the Home Media Gallery

This receiver's Home Media Gallery function allows you to listen to audio files or listen to Internet radio stations on a computer or other component connected to the receiver's LAN terminal. This chapter describes the setup and playback procedures required to enjoy these features. It is advisory that you also refer to the operation manual supplied with your network component.

- To listen to Internet radio stations, you must sign a contract with an ISP (Internet Service Provider) beforehand.
- Photo or video files cannot be played back.
- With Windows Media Player 11 or Windows Media Player 12, you can even play back copyrighted audio files on this receiver.

Features of Home Media Gallery

This receiver is equipped with the LAN terminal and you can enjoy the following features by connecting your components to these terminals.

1 Playback the music files stored in PCs

You can playback a lot of musics stored in your PCs using this unit.

→See *Playback with Home Media Gallery* on page 37 and *Playback with Home Media Gallery* on page 37 .

- Besides a PC, you can also play back audio files stored on your other components with the built-in media server function based on DLNA 1.0 or DLNA 1.5 framework and protocols (i.e. network-capable hard disks and audio systems).

2 Listening to Internet radio stations

You can select and listen to your favorite Internet radio station from the list of Internet radio stations created, edited, and managed by the vTuner database service exclusively for use with the Pioneer products.

→See *Playback with Home Media Gallery* on page 37 and *Listening to Internet radio stations* on page 37 .

Introduction

About playable DLNA network devices

The Home Media Gallery allows you to play music on media servers connected on an identical Local Area Network (LAN) as the receiver. This unit allows for the playing of files stored on the following:

- PCs running Microsoft Windows Vista or XP with Windows Media Player 11 installed
- PCs running Microsoft Windows 7 with Windows Media Player 12 installed
- DLNA-compatible digital media servers (on PCs or other components)

Files stored in a PC or DMS (Digital Media Server) as described above can be played via command from an external Digital Media Controller (DMC). Devices controlled by this DMC to play files are called DMRs (Digital Media Renderers). This receiver supports this DMR function. When in the DMR mode, such operations as playing and stopping files can be performed from the external controller. Volume adjustment and the muting control are also possible. The DMR mode is canceled if the remote control unit is operated while in the DMR mode (aside from certain buttons, including the **MASTER VOLUME +/–**, **MUTE** and **DISP**).

- Depending on the external controller being used, playback may be interrupted when the volume is adjusted from the controller. In this case, adjust the volume from the receiver or remote control.

Using AirPlay on iPod touch, iPhone, iPad and iTunes

This receiver supports AirPlay audio streaming from iPod touch (2nd, 3rd and 4th generations), iPhone 4, iPhone 3GS, iPad with iOS 4.2 or later, and iTunes 10.1 (Mac and PC) or later.

To use AirPlay, select your receiver on your iPod touch, iPhone, iPad or in iTunes. ✶1

The receiver's input will switch automatically to Home Media Gallery when AirPlay is in use. ✶2

The following operations can be performed when in AirPlay mode:

- Adjustment of the receiver's volume from iPod touch, iPhone, iPad or iTunes.
- Pause/resume, next/previous track, and shuffle/repeat from the remote control of the receiver.
- Display of the currently playing track information on the receiver's display, including artist, song and album name.

✶1: For more information, see the Apple website (http://www.apple.com).

✶2: The receiver's power automatically turns on when **Network Standby** at **Network Setup** is set to **ON**.

Note

- A network environment is required to use AirPlay.
- The receiver's name that shows up in the AirPlay UI on iPod touch, iPhone, iPad and iTunes can be changed by **Friendly Name** from **Network Setup**.
- AirPlay provided on this receiver has been developed and tested based on the software versions for the iPod, iPhone, iPad and the software versions for iTunes that are indicated on the Pioneer website. AirPlay may not be compatible with iPod, iPhone, iPad or iTunes software versions other than those indicated on the Pioneer website.

About the DHCP server function

To play back audio files stored on components on the network or listen to Internet radio stations, you must turn on the DHCP server function of your router. In case your router does not have the built-in DHCP server function, it is necessary to set up the network manually. Otherwise, you cannot play back audio files stored on components on the network or listen to Internet radio stations. See *Network Setup menu* on page 64 for more on this.

Authorizing this receiver

In order to be able to play with Home Media Gallery, this receiver must be authorized. This happens automatically when the receiver makes a connection over the network to the PC. If not, please authorize this receiver manually on the PC. The authorization (or permission) method for access varies depending on the type of server currently being connected. For more information on authorizing this receiver, refer to the instruction manual of your server.

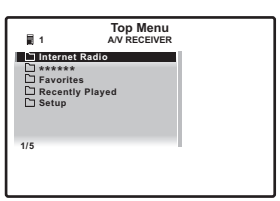
Playback with Home Media Gallery

Important

- When you play back audio files, '**Connecting...**' is displayed before playback starts. The display may continue for several seconds depending on the type of file.
- In case a domain is configured in a Windows network environment, you cannot access a PC on the network while you are logged onto the domain. Instead of logging onto the domain, log onto the local machine.
- There are cases where the time elapsed may not be correctly displayed.

1 Press HMG to select Home Media Gallery as the input function.

It may take several seconds for this receiver to access the network. The following screen appears when the Home Media Gallery is selected as the input function. The number next to 1 indicates the number of connected servers.



- The server without the mark cannot be accessed.

2 Use ⬆/⬇ to select the category you want to play back, and then press ENTER.

Select a category from the following list:

- **Internet Radio** – Internet radio
- ***Server Name*** – Server components on the network
- **Favorites** – Favorite songs currently being registered
- **Recently played** – Internet Radio listening history (most recent 20 incidents)

Depending on the selected category, the names of folders, files, and Internet radio stations are displayed.

3 Use ⬆/⬇ to select the folder, music files or Internet radio station to play back, and then press ENTER.

Press ⬆/⬇ to scroll up and down the list and select the desired item. When you press **ENTER**, playback starts with the playback screen being displayed for the selected item. To return to the list screen, press **RETURN**.

When the list screen is displayed from the playback screen, the playback screen reappears automatically if no operation is performed for 10 seconds while the list screen is displayed.

Only audio files with the ♫ mark can be played.

In case of the folders with the mark, use ⬆/⬇ and **ENTER** to select the desired folder and audio files.

4 Repeat step 3 to play back the desired song.

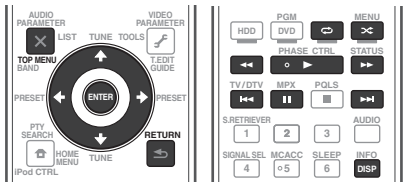
For detailed operating instructions, refer to the section shown below.

- Internet radio stations – See *Listening to Internet radio stations* on page 37 .
- Server – See *Playing back audio files stored on components on the network* on page 37 .

Playing back audio files stored on components on the network

You can perform the following operations with the remote control of this receiver. Note that some buttons are not available for operation depending on the category currently being played back.

- Press **HMG** to switch the remote control to the **HOME MEDIA GALLERY** operation mode.



Listening to Internet radio stations

Internet radio is an audio broadcasting service transmitted via the Internet. There are a large number of Internet radio stations broadcasting a variety of services from every corner of the world. Some are hosted, managed, and broadcast by private individuals while others are by the corresponding traditional terrestrial radio stations or radio networks. Whereas terrestrial, or OTA (over-the-air), radio stations are geographically restricted on the range of radio waves broadcast from a transmitter through the air, Internet radio stations are accessible from anywhere in the world, as long as there is a connection to the Internet, as services are not transmitted through the air but are delivered over the World Wide Web. On this receiver you can select Internet radio stations by genre as well as by region.

Depending on the Internet line conditions, the sound may not be smooth when playing Internet radio.

About list of Internet radio

The list of Internet radio stations on this receiver is created, edited, and managed by the vTuner database service exclusively for use with this receiver. For details about vTuner, see *vTuner* on page 81 .

Saving and retrieving Internet radio stations

You can easily save and retrieve saved Internet radio stations. See *Advanced operations for Internet radio* on page 38 for more on this.

- To listen to Internet radio stations, you must have high-speed broadband Internet access. With a 56 K or ISDN modem, you may not enjoy the full benefits of Internet radio.
- The port number varies depending on the Internet radio station. Check the firewall settings.
- A list of Internet radio stations provided by the vTuner database service is subject to change or deletion without notice due to various reasons.
- Broadcasts may be stopped or interrupted depending on the Internet radio station. In this case, you cannot listen to a radio station selected from the list of Internet radio stations.

Registering broadcast stations not on the vTuner list from the special Pioneer site

With the receiver, broadcast stations not included on the list of station distributed by vTuner can be registered and played. Check the access code required for registration on the receiver, use this access code to access the special Pioneer Internet radio site and register the desired broadcast stations in your favorites. The address of the special Pioneer Internet radio site is:

http://www.radio-pioneer.com

1 Display the Internet Radio list screen.

To display the Internet Radio list screen, perform steps 1 to 3 at *Playback with Home Media Gallery* on page 37 .

2 Use ⬆/⬇ to select 'Help', then press ENTER.

3 Use ↑/↓ to select 'Get access code', then press ENTER.
The access code required for registration on the special Pioneer Internet radio site is displayed. Make a memo of this address.
The following can be checked on the **Help** screen:

- **Get access code** – The access code required for registration on the special Pioneer Internet radio site is displayed.
- **Show Your WebID/PW** – After registering on the special Pioneer Internet radio site, the registered ID and password are displayed.
- **Reset Your WebID/PW** – Resets all the information registered on the special Pioneer Internet radio site. When reset, all the registered broadcast stations are also cleared. If you want to listen to the same stations, re-register after resetting.

4 Access the special Pioneer Internet radio site from your computer and perform the registration process.
http://www.radio-pioneer.com
Access the above site and use the access code in step 3 to perform user registration, following the instructions on the screen.

5 Register the desired broadcast stations as your favorites, following the instructions on the computer's screen.
Both broadcast stations not on the vTuner list and stations on the vTuner list can be registered. In this case they are registered on the receiver as favorite broadcast stations and can be played.

Playing back your favorite songs

You can register up to 20 of your favorite songs or Internet radio stations in the Favorites folder. Note that only the audio files stored on components on the network can be registered.

Registering and deleting audio files and Internet radio stations in and from the Favorites folder

Press **PGM** while a song is being played back or stopped. The selected song is then registered in the Favorites folder.
Up to 20 songs or Internet radio stations can be registered.
To delete a registered song, select the Favorites folder, select the song you want to delete from the folder, and press **CLR**. The selected song is then deleted from the Favorites folder.

Advanced operations for Internet radio

Saving Internet radio stations

This receiver can remember the Internet radio stations that you often listen to in seven classes (**A** to **G**) with up to nine stations in each class to make the total of 63 stations at its maximum capacity.

1 Tune into the Internet radio station that you want to save.
Tune into the desired Internet radio station by following Steps 1 to 3 on page 37.

2 Press T.EDIT to switch to the station-saving mode.

3 Press CLASS to select the class that you want to save the station in.
Select the desired class from **A** to **G**.

4 Use ↑/↓ to select the number that you want to save the station as, and then press ENTER.
You can also select the station number by using the number buttons. Select the desired number from 1 to 9.

Retrieving saved Internet radio stations

You need to save Internet radio stations first before retrieving them. If there are no Internet radio stations currently being saved, see *Saving Internet radio stations* on page 38 and save at least one Internet radio station before proceeding with the following steps.

1 Select the class that you want to retrieve an Internet radio station from.
Each time you press **CLASS**, the class switches to **A** to **G** in turn.

2 Use ↑/↓ to select the station number that you want to retrieve.
You can also select the station number by using the number buttons.
'**Preset Not Stored**' appears when you select an Internet radio station currently not being saved.

About network playback

The network playback function of this unit uses the following technologies:

Windows Media Player

See *Windows Media Player 11/ Windows Media Player 12* on page 81 for more on this.

Windows Media DRM

Microsoft Windows Media Digital Rights Management (WMDRM) is a platform to protect and securely deliver content for playback on computers, portable devices and network devices. Home Media Gallery functions as a WMDRM 10 for networked devices. WMDRM protected content can only be played on media servers supporting WMDRM.
Content owners use WMDRM technology to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When you download licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

DLNA

DLNA CERTIFIED™ Audio Player
The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a cross-industry organization of consumer electronics, computing industry and mobile device companies. Digital Living provides consumers with easy sharing of digital media through a wired or wireless network in the home.
The DLNA certification logo makes it easy to find products that comply with the DLNA Interoperability Guidelines. This unit complies with DLNA Interoperability Guidelines v1.5. When a PC running DLNA server software or other DLNA compatible device is connected to this player, some setting changes of software or other devices may be required. Please refer to the operating instructions for the software or device for more information.

DLNA™, the DLNA Logo and DLNA CERTIFIED™ are trademarks, service marks, or certification marks of the Digital Living Network Alliance.

Content playable over a network

- Even when encoded in a compatible format, some files may not play correctly.
- Movie or Photo files cannot be played back.
- There are cases where you cannot listen to an Internet radio station even if the station can be selected from a list of radio stations.
- Some functions may not be supported depending on the server type or version used.
- Supported file formats vary by server. As such, files not supported by your server are not displayed on this unit. For more information check with the manufacturer of your server.

Disclaimer for Third Party Content

Access to content provided by third parties requires a high speed internet connection and may also require account registration and a paid subscription.
Third party content services may be changed, suspended, interrupted, or discontinued at any time without notice, and Pioneer disclaims any liability in connection with such occurrences. Pioneer does not represent or warrant that content services will continue to be provided or available for a particular period of time, and any such warranty, express or implied, is disclaimed.

About playback behavior over a network

- Playback may stall when the PC is switched off or any media files stored on it are deleted while playing content.
- If there are problems within the network environment (heavy network traffic, etc.) content may not be displayed or played properly (playback may be interrupted or stalled). For best performance, a 100BASE-TX connection between player and PC is recommended.
- If several clients are playing simultaneously, as the case may be, playback is interrupted or stalled.
- Depending on the security software installed on a connected PC and the setting of such software, network connection may be blocked.

Pioneer is not responsible for any malfunction of the player and/or the Home Media Gallery features due to communication error/malfunctions associated with your network connection and/or your PC, or other connected equipment. Please contact your PC manufacturer or Internet service provider.
"Windows Media™" is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
This product includes technology owned by Microsoft Corporation and cannot be used or distributed without a license from Microsoft Licensing, Inc.
Microsoft®, Windows®7, Windows®Vista, Windows®XP, Windows®2000, Windows®Millennium Edition, Windows®98, and WindowsNT® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

About playable file formats

The Home Media Gallery feature of this receiver supports the following file formats. Note that some file formats are not available for playback although they are listed as playable file formats. Also, the compatibility of file formats varies depending on the type of server. Check with your server to ensure the compatibility of file formats supported by your server.

- Internet radio playback may be affected by the Internet communications environment, and in this case playback may not be possible even with the file formats listed here.

Music files

Category	Extension	Stream		
MP3 <a>	.mp3	MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3	Sampling frequency	8 kHz to 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit
			Channel	2 ch
			Bitrate	8 kbps to 320 kbps
			VBR/CBR	Supported/Supported
LPCM	— <b>	LPCM	Sampling frequency	8 kHz to 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit, 20 bit, 24 bit
			Channel	2 ch
WAV	.wav	LPCM	Sampling frequency	*In case of VSX-1021* 8 kHz to 192 kHz *In case of VSX-921* 8 kHz to 96 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit, 20 bit, 24 bit
			Channel	2 ch
WMA	.wma	WMA2/7/8	Sampling frequency	8 kHz to 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit
			Channel	2 ch
			Bitrate	5 kbps to 320 kbps
			VBR/CBR	Supported/Supported
		WMA9	Sampling frequency	8 kHz to 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit
			Channel	2 ch
			Bitrate	5 kbps to 320 kbps
			VBR/CBR	Supported/Supported

Category	Extension	Stream		
AAC	.m4a .aac .3gp .3g2	MPEG-4 AAC LC MPEG-4 HE AAC (aacPlus v1/2)	Sampling frequency	32 kHz to 48 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	16 bit
			Channel	2 ch
			Bitrate	16 kbps to 320 kbps
			VBR/CBR	Supported/Supported
FLAC	.flac	FLAC	Sampling frequency	8 kHz to 96 kHz
			Quantization bitrate	8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit
			Channel	2 ch
			Bitrate	—
			VBR/CBR	—

a *"MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson multimedia."*

b Only streaming data from servers is concerned, so there is no extension.

Control with HDMI function

About the Control with HDMI function

Synchronized operations below with a **Control** with HDMI-compatible Pioneer TV or Blu-ray Disc player or with a component of another make that supports the **Control** with HDMI functions are possible when the component is connected to the receiver using an HDMI cable.

- The receiver's volume can be set and the sound can be muted using the TV's remote control.
- The receiver's input switches over automatically when the TV's input is changed or a **Control** with HDMI-compatible component is played.
- The receiver's power is also set to standby, when the TV's power is set to standby.

Important

- With Pioneer devices, the **Control** with HDMI functions are referred to as "KURO LINK".
- You cannot use this function with components that do not support **Control** with HDMI.
- We only guarantee this receiver will work with Pioneer **Control** with HDMI-compatible components and components of other makes that support the **Control** with HDMI function. However, we do not guarantee that all synchronized operations will work with components of other makes that support the **Control** with HDMI function.
- Use a High Speed HDMI® cable when you want to use the **Control** with HDMI function. The **Control** with HDMI function may not work properly if a different type of HDMI cable is used.
- For details about concrete operations, settings, etc., refer to also the operating instructions for each component.

Making Control with HDMI connections

You can use synchronized operation for a connected TV and up to six (VSX-1021)/four (VSX-921) other components.

- Be sure to connect the TV's audio cable to the audio input of this unit. When the TV and receiver are connected by HDMI connections, if the TV supports the HDMI ARC (Audio Return Channel) function, the sound of the TV is input to the receiver via the **HDMI OUT** terminal, so there is no need to connect an audio cable. In this case, set **TV Audio** at **HDMI Setup** to **via HDMI** (see *HDMI Setup* on page 41).

For details, see *Connecting your TV and playback components* on page 16 .

Important

- When connecting this system or changing connections, be sure to switch the power off and disconnect the power cord from the wall socket. After completing all connections, connect the power cords to the wall socket.
- After this receiver is connected to an AC outlet, a 2 second to 10 second HDMI initialization process begins. You cannot carry out any operations during this process. The **HDMI** indicator in the front panel display blinks during this process, and you can turn on this receiver once it has stopped blinking. When you set the **Control** with HDMI to **OFF**, you can skip this process. For details about the **Control** with HDMI feature, see *Control with HDMI function* on page 41 .
- To get the most out of this function, we recommend that you connect your HDMI component not to a TV but rather directly to the HDMI terminal on this receiver.

HDMI Setup

You must adjust the settings of this receiver as well as the connected **Control** with HDMI-compatible components in order to make use of the **Control** with HDMI function. For more information see the operating instructions for each component.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

2 Select 'System Setup', then press ENTER.

3 Select 'HDMI Setup', then press ENTER.

4 Select the 'Control' setting you want.

Choose whether to set this unit's **Control** with HDMI function **ON** or **OFF**. You will need to set it to **ON** to use the **Control** with HDMI function. When using a component that does not support the **Control** with HDMI function, set this to **OFF**.

- **ON** – Enables the **Control** with HDMI function. When this unit's power is turned off and you have a supported source begin playback while using the **Control** with HDMI function, the audio and video outputs from the HDMI connection are output from the TV.
- **OFF** – The **Control** with HDMI is disabled. Synchronized operations cannot be used. When this unit's power is turned off, audio and video of sources connected via HDMI are not output.

5 Select the 'Control Mode' setting you want.

Choose whether you want to enable HDMI for all linked functions or the PQLS function only. However, Display Power Off will activate the settings set forth in step 6 below.

- **ALL** – Enabled for all linked functions.
- **PQLS** – Enabled only for the PQLS function. When **PQLS** is selected, link functions other than the PQLS function may not work properly. If you wish to use all link functions, select **ALL**.

6 Select the 'Display Power Off' setting you want.

If the TV's power is turned off while using the **Control** with HDMI function, the receiver's power is also turned off (all power off function). This function can be disabled.

- **YES** – The all power off function is enabled. The receiver's power turns off together with the TV's power. This function only works when the input for a component connected to the receiver by HDMI connection is selected or when watching the TV.
- **NO** – The all power off function is disabled. The receiver's power is not affected when the TV's power is turned off.

7 Select the 'Standby Through' setting you want.

It is possible to transfer signals from an HDMI-connected player to the TV when this receiver's power is on standby as long as **Control** is **ON**, but the amount of energy consumed rises. It is, however, possible to minimize energy consumption when power is set to standby.

- **Normal** – Regular setting. Power-up time from standby is short.
- **Eco** – Conserves energy while standby. Power-up time is longer than when set to **Normal**.

8 Select the 'TV Audio' setting you want.
When a TV supporting the HDMI ARC (Audio Return Channel) function is connected to the receiver, the sound of the TV can be input via the **HDMI OUT** terminal.

- **Normal** – The TV's sound is input from the Audio input terminals other than HDMI inputs.
- **via HDMI** – The TV's sound is input via the HDMI terminal. This can only be selected when **Control** is set to **ON**.

9 When you're finished, press HOME MENU.

Before using synchronization

Once you have finished all connections and settings, you must:

1 Put all components into standby mode.

2 Turn the power on for all components, with the power for the TV being turned on last.

3 Choose the HDMI input to which the TV is connected to this receiver, and see if video output from connected components displays properly on the screen or not.

4 Check whether the components connected to all HDMI inputs are properly displayed.

About synchronized operations

The **Control** with HDMI-compatible component connected to the receiver operates in sync as described below.

- From the menu screen of the **Control** with HDMI-compatible TV, set audio to be played through this receiver, and the receiver will switch to the synchronized amp mode.
- When in the synchronized amp mode, you can adjust the receiver's volume or mute the sound using the TV's remote control.
- When in the synchronized amp mode, the synchronized amp mode is canceled when the receiver's power is turned off. To turn the synchronized amp mode back on, set audio to be played through the receiver from the TV's menu screen, etc. This receiver will power up and switch to the synchronized amp mode.
- When the synchronized amp mode is canceled, the receiver's power turns off if you were viewing an HDMI input or a TV program on the TV.
- When in the synchronized amp mode, the synchronized amp mode is canceled if an operation that produces sound from the TV is performed from the TV's menu screen, etc.
- When the TV's power is set to standby, the receiver's power is also set to standby. (Only when the input for a component connected to the receiver by HDMI connection is selected or when watching the TV.)
- The receiver's input switches automatically when the **Control** with HDMI-compatible component is played.
- The receiver's input switches automatically when the TV's input is switched.
- The synchronized amp mode remains in effect even if the receiver's input is switched to a component other than one connected by HDMI.

The operations below can also be used on Pioneer **Control** with HDMI-compatible TVs.

- When the receiver's volume is adjusted or the sound is muted, the volume status is displayed on the TV's screen.
- When the OSD language is switched on the TV, the receiver's language setting also switches accordingly.

About connections with a product of a different brand that supports the Control with HDMI function

The synchronized operations below can be used when the receiver's **Control** with HDMI function is connected to a TV of a brand other than Pioneer that supports the **Control** with HDMI function. (Depending on the TV, however, some of the **Control** with HDMI functions may not work.)

- When the TV's power is set to standby, the receiver's power is also set to standby. (Only when the input for a component connected to the receiver by HDMI connection is selected or when watching the TV)
- The sound of TV programs or an external input connected to the TV can also be output from the speakers connected to the receiver. (If the TV does not support the HDMI ARC (Audio Return Channel) function, this requires connection of an optical digital cable, etc., in addition to the HDMI cable.)

The synchronized operations below can be used when the receiver's **Control** with HDMI function is connected to a player or recorder of a brand other than Pioneer that supports the **Control** with HDMI function.

- When playback starts on the player or recorder, the receiver's input switches to the HDMI input to which that component is connected.

See the Pioneer website for the latest information on the models of non-Pioneer brands and products that support the **Control** with HDMI function.

Setting the PQLS function

PQLS (Precision Quartz Lock System) is a digital audio signal transfer control technology using the **Control** with HDMI function. It offers higher-quality audio playback by controlling audio signals from the receiver to a PQLS compatible player, etc. This enables removing jitter that has a negative effect on the quality of the sound and is generated upon transmission.

- *VSX-1021 only:* On players compatible with PQLS Bit-stream, PQLS always works for all sources.
- On players compatible with PQLS Multi Surround, PQLS works for all sources. Set the player's audio output to Linear PCM.
- On players compatible with PQLS 2 ch Audio, PQLS only works when playing CDs.

Please refer to the operating instructions supplied with your player for more information.
This function is activated when **Control** is set to **ON**.

- If a listening mode other than **AUTO SURROUND**, **ALC**, **DIRECT**, **PURE DIRECT** or **STEREO** is selected while the PQLS effect is enabled, the PQLS effect is disabled.
- When this receiver is connected by HDMI cable to a Pioneer player that is compatible with the PQLS function via HDMI connection and HDMI reauthentication is performed (the **HDMI** indicator blinks), the PQLS effect is enabled and the listening mode is set to **AUTO SURROUND** if a listening mode other than **AUTO SURROUND**, **ALC**, **DIRECT**, **PURE DIRECT** or **STEREO** is selected.

● **Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press PQLS to select the PQLS setting.**
The setting is displayed on the front panel display.

- **PQLS AUTO** – PQLS is enabled. A precision quartz controller in this receiver eliminates distortion caused by timing errors (jitter), giving you the best possible digital-to-analog conversion when you use the HDMI interface. This is valid as an HDMI function for PQLS-compatible players.
- **PQLS OFF** – PQLS is disabled.

Cautions on the Control with HDMI function

- Connect the TV directly to this receiver. Interrupting a direct connection with other amps or an AV converter (such as an HDMI switch) can cause operational errors.
- Only connect components (Blu-ray Disc player, etc.) you intend to use as a source to the HDMI input of this receiver. Interrupting a direct connection with other amps or an AV converter (such as an HDMI switch) can cause operational errors.
- When **Control** is set to **ON**, **HDMI Input** in *The Input Setup menu* on page 24 is automatically set to **OFF**.
- When the receiver's **Control** is turned **ON**, even if the receiver's power is in the standby mode, it is possible to output the audio and video signals from a player via HDMI to the TV without producing sound from the receiver, but only when a **Control** with HDMI-compatible component (Blu-ray Disc player, etc.) and compatible TV are connected. In this case, the receiver's power turns on and the power and **HDMI** indicators light.

Using other functions

Setting the Audio options

There are a number of additional sound settings you can make using the **AUDIO PARAMETER** menu. The defaults, if not stated, are listed in bold.

Important

- Note that if a setting doesn't appear in the **AUDIO PARAMETER** menu, it is unavailable due to the current source, settings and status of the receiver.

1 Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode, then press AUDIO PARAMETER.

2 Use ↑/↓ to select the setting you want to adjust.

Depending on the current status/mode of the receiver, certain options may not be able to be selected. Check the table below for notes on this.

3 Use ←/→ to set as necessary.

See the table below for the options available for each setting.

4 Press RETURN to confirm and exit the menu.

Audio parameter menu

Setting	What it does	Option(s)
MCACC (MCACC preset)	Selects your favorite MCACC preset memory when multiple preset memories are saved. When an MCACC preset memory has been renamed, the given name is displayed.	◄ M1. MEMORY 1 to M6. MEMORY 6 ► Default: **M1. MEMORY 1**
EQ (Acoustic Calibration EQ)	Switches on/off the effects of EQ Pro.	**ON** OFF
S-WAVE (Standing Wave)	Switches on/off the effects of Standing Wave Control.	**ON** OFF
Phase C+ (Phase Control Plus)	For discs created with standards other than Phase Control, the LFE channel is delayed upon recording in the first place. This function corrects for phase shifting on such discs.	◄ 0 to 16 (ms) ► Default: **6ms**
DELAY (Sound Delay)	Some monitors have a slight delay when showing video, so the soundtrack will be slightly out of sync with the picture. By adding a bit of delay, you can adjust the sound to match the presentation of the video.	◄ 0.0 to 10.0 (frames) ► *1 second = 25 frames (PAL)* Default: **0.0**
TONE (Tone Control)	Applies the treble and bass tone controls to a source, or bypasses them completely. This setting is only displayed when the listening mode is **STEREO**, Auto surround (**STEREO**) or **SOUND RETRIEVER AIR**.	**BYPASS** ON
BASS <a>	Adjusts the amount of bass.	◄ –6 to +6 (dB) ► Default: **0** (dB)
TREBLE <a>	Adjusts the amount of treble.	◄ –6 to +6 (dB) ► Default: **0** (dB)
S.RTRV (Auto Sound Retriever) <b>	With the Auto Sound Retriever function, DSP processing is used to compensate for the loss of audio data upon compression, improving the sound's sense of density and modulation. When **ON** is selected, the Sound Retriever effect is optimized based on the bitrate information of the contents input to the USB memory audio and **HOME MEDIA GALLERY** (digital audio input only) to achieve high sound quality.	**OFF** ON
DNR (Digital Noise Reduction)	May improve the quality of sound in a noisy source (for example, video tape with lots of background noise) when switched on. This only has an effect with 2-channel signal inputs.	**OFF** ON
DIALOG E (Dialog Enhancement) <c>	Localizes dialog in the center channel to make it stand out from other background sounds in a TV or movie soundtrack. By moving from UP1 through UP2 and UP3 up to UP4, you can make the sound source seem to relocate upwards.	◄ OFF/FLAT/UP1/UP2/UP3/UP4 ► Default: **OFF**
DUAL (Dual Mono)	Specifies how dual mono encoded Dolby Digital soundtracks should be played. Dual mono is not widely used, but is sometimes necessary when two languages need to be sent to separate channels.	**CH1** – Channel 1 is heard only CH2 – Channel 2 is heard only CH1 CH2 – Both channels heard from front speakers
Fixed PCM	This is useful if you find there is a slight delay before **OFF** recognizes the PCM signal on a CD, for instance. When **ON** is selected, noise may be output during playback of non-PCM sources. Please select another input signal if this is a problem.	**OFF** ON
DRC (Dynamic Range Control) <d>	Adjusts the level of dynamic range for movie soundtracks optimized for Dolby Digital, DTS, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD and DTS-HD Master Audio (you may need to use this feature when listening to surround sound at low volumes).	**AUTO** MAX MID OFF

Setting	What it does	Option(s)
LFE (LFE Attenuate)	Some audio sources include ultra-low bass tones. Set the LFE attenuator as necessary to prevent the ultra-low bass tones from distorting the sound from the speakers. The LFE is not limited when set to 0 dB, which is the recommended value. When set to –5 dB, –10 dB, –15 dB or –20 dB, the LFE is limited by the respective degree. When OFF is selected, no sound is output from the LFE channel.	◄ OFF/ –20dB/ –15dB/ –10dB/ –5dB/ 0dB ► Default: **0dB**
SACD GAIN <e>	Brings out detail in SACDs by maximizing the dynamic range (during digital processing).	**0dB** +6dB
HDMI (HDMI Audio) <f>	Specifies the routing of the HDMI audio signal out of this receiver (amp) or through to a TV. When THROUGH is selected, no sound is output from this receiver.	**AMP** THROUGH
A.DELAY (Auto delay) <g>	This feature automatically corrects the audio-to-video delay between components connected with an HDMI cable. The audio delay time is set depending on the operational status of the display connected with an HDMI cable. The video delay time is automatically adjusted according to the audio delay time.	**OFF** ON
C.WIDTH (Center Width) (Applicable only when using a center speaker) <h>	Provides a better blend of the front speakers by spreading the center channel between the front right and left speakers, making it sound wider (higher settings) or narrower (lower settings).	◄ 0 to 7 ► Default: **3**
DIMENSION <h>	Adjusts the depth of the surround sound balance from front to back, making the sound more distant (minus settings), or more forward (positive settings).	◄ –3 to +3 ► Default: **0**
PANORAMA <h>	Extends the front stereo image to include the surround speakers for a 'wraparound' effect.	**OFF** ON
C.IMAGE (Center Image) (Applicable only when using a center speaker) <i>	Adjusts the center image to create a wider stereo effect with vocals. Adjust the effect from 0 (all center channel sent to front right and left speakers) to 10 (center channel sent to the center speaker only).	◄ 0 to 10 ► Defaults: Neo:6 MUSIC: **3** Neo:6 CINEMA: **10**
EFFECT	Sets the effect level for the currently selected Advanced Surround or ALC mode (each mode can be set separately).	◄ 10 to 90 ► Defaults: EXT.STEREO: **90** Others: **50**

Setting	What it does	Option(s)
H.GAIN (Height Gain)	Adjusts the output from the front height speaker when listening in **Pro Logic IIz HEIGHT** mode. If set to HIGH, the sound from the top will be more emphasized.	LOW **MID** HIGH
V.SB (Virtual Surround Back) <j>	When you're not using surround back speakers, selecting this mode allows you to hear a virtual surround back channel through your surround speakers. You can choose to listen to sources with no surround back channel information.	**OFF** ON
V.HEIGHT (Virtual Height) <k>	When you're not using front height speakers, selecting this mode allows you to hear a virtual front height channel through your front speakers.	**OFF** ON

a The adjustment can be made only when **TONE** is set to **ON**.

b With the **iPod/USB**, **HOME MEDIA GALLERY** or **ADAPTER PORT** input function, by default **S.RTRV** is set to **ON**.

c UP1 to UP4 can be selected only when the front height speaker is connected. The presence or absence of effects depends on the listening mode.

d The initially set **AUTO** is only available for Dolby TrueHD signals. Select **MAX** or **MID** for signals other than Dolby TrueHD.

e You shouldn't have any problems using this with most SACD discs, but if the sound distorts, it is best to switch the gain setting back to **0dB**.

f • The HDMI Audio setting cannot be switched while performing synchronized amp mode operations.
• The synchronized amp mode must be turned on in order to play the receiver's HDMI audio and video input signals from the TV with the receiver's power in the standby mode. See *About synchronized operations* on page 42 .

g This feature is only available when the connected display supports the automatic audio/video synchronizing capability ('lipsync') for HDMI. If you find the automatically set delay time unsuitable, set **A.DELAY** to **OFF** and adjust the delay time manually. For more details about the lipsync feature of your display, contact the manufacturer directly.

h Only when listening to 2-channel sources in Dolby Pro Logic IIx Music/Dolby Pro Logic II Music mode.

i Only when listening to 2-channel sources in Neo:6 MUSIC/CINEMA mode.

j • You can't use the Virtual Surround Back mode when the headphones are connected to this receiver or when any of the stereo, Front Stage Surround Advance, Sound Retriever Air or Stream Direct modes is selected.
• You can only use the Virtual Surround Back mode if the surround speakers are on and the **SB** setting is set to **NO** or if **Front Bi-Amp** or **ZONE 2** is selected at **Speaker System**. It can also be used when **Speaker B** is selected at **Speaker System** and **SP:►A+B ON** is selected with the **SPEAKERS** button.

k • You can't use the Virtual Height mode when the headphones are connected to this receiver or when any of the stereo, Front Stage Surround Advance, Sound Retriever Air or Stream Direct modes is selected.
• You can only use the Virtual Height mode if the surround speakers are on and the **FH** setting is set to **NO**. It can also not be used when playing signals containing actual front height channel information.

Setting the Video options

There are a number of additional picture settings you can make using the **VIDEO PARAMETER** menu. The defaults, if not stated, are listed in bold.

Important

- Note that if an option cannot be selected on the **VIDEO PARAMETER** menu, it is unavailable due to the current source, setting and status of the receiver.
- All of the setting items can be set for each input function.
- Setting items other than **V.CONV** can only be selected when **V.CONV** is set to **ON**.

1 Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode, then press VIDEO PARAMETER.

2 Use ↑/↓ to select the setting you want to adjust.

Depending on the current status/mode of the receiver, certain options may not be able to be selected. Check the table below for notes on this.

3 Use ←/→ to set as necessary.

See the table below for the options available for each setting.

4 Press RETURN to confirm and exit the menu.

Video parameter menu

Setting	What it does	Option(s)
V.CONV (Digital Video Converter) <a>	Converts video signals for output from the **MONITOR OUT** jacks (including **HDMI OUT** connector) for all video types (see page 14).	**ON** OFF
RES (Resolution) <b>	Specifies the output resolution of the video signal (when video input signals are output at the **HDMI OUT** connector, select this according to the resolution of your monitor and the images you wish to watch).	**AUTO** PURE 480p/576p 720p 1080i 1080p
PCINEMA (PureCinema) <c>	This setting optimizes the operation of the progressive scanning circuit for playing film materials. Normally set it to **AUTO**. If the picture seems unnatural, switch this to **ON** or **OFF**.	**AUTO** ON OFF
P.MOTION (Progressive Motion) <c>	Adjusts the motion and still picture quality when video output is set to progressive.	◄ –4 to +4 ► Default: **0**
V.ADJ (Advanced Video Adjust)	Sets the optimum picture quality for the type of monitor that is connected. Select **PDP** for plasma displays, **LCD** for liquid crystal monitors, **FPJ** for front projectors, **PRO** for professional monitors. If you want to adjust the picture quality settings to your personal tastes, select **MEMORY**.	**PDP** LCD FPJ PRO MEMORY
YNR <d, e>	Reduces noise in the luminance (Y) signal.	◄ 0 to +8 ► Default: **0**
DETAIL <d, e>	Adjusts how sharp edges appear.	◄ –4 to +4 ► Default: **0**
SHARP (Sharpness) <d, f>	Adjusts the sharpness of the high-frequency (detailed) elements in the picture.	◄ 0 to +8 ► Default: **0**
BRIGHT (Brightness) <d, f>	Adjusts the overall brightness.	◄ –6 to +6 ► Default: **0**
CONTRAST <d, f>	Adjusts the contrast between light and dark.	◄ –6 to +6 ► Default: **0**
HUE <d, f>	Adjusts the red/green balance.	◄ –6 to +6 ► Default: **0**
CHROMA (Chroma Level) <d, f>	Adjusts saturation from dull to bright.	◄ –6 to +6 ► Default: **0**
BLK SETUP (Black Setup) <g>	Sets the black level according to the video input signal. Normally select **0**. If the black level is too bright due to the combination with the connected monitor, select **7.5**.	**0** 7.5
ASP (Aspect) <h>	Specifies the aspect ratio when input signals are output at the HDMI output. Make your desired settings while checking each setting on your display (if the image doesn't match your monitor type, cropping or black bands appear).	**THROUGH** NORMAL

a If the video picture deteriorates when this settings is switched **ON**, switch it **OFF**.

b • When set to a resolution with which the TV (monitor) is not compatible, no picture is output. Also, in some cases no picture will be output due to copyright protection signals. In this case, change the setting.
• When **AUTO** is selected, the resolution is selected automatically according to the capacity of the TV (monitor) connected by HDMI. When **PURE** is selected, the signals are output with the same resolution as when input (see *About the video converter* on page 14).
• If this is set to something other than **PURE** and 480i/576i analog signals are input, 480p/576p signals are output from the component output terminals.
• The default is **PURE** when HDMI input is selected.

c • This setting is valid for component outputs and HDMI output.
• **P.MOTION** is disabled when **PCINEMA** is set to **ON**.
• This setting is only displayed when the video signals below are being input:
— 480i or 576i analog video signals

d Adjustment is not possible unless **V.ADJ** (Advanced Video Adjust) is set to **MEMORY**.

e • This setting is only displayed when the video signals below are being input:
— 480i or 576i analog video signals
f • This setting is only displayed when the video signals below are being input:
— 480i, 576i, 480p, 576p, 720p, 1080i analog video signals
— 480i, 576i, 480p, 576p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p, 1080p24 HDMI video signals
g This adjustment is only possible when 480i signals are being input from the composite video jacks.
h • If the image doesn't match your monitor type, adjust the aspect ratio on the source component or on the monitor.
• This setting is only displayed when 480i/p or 576i/p video signals are being input.

Switching the speaker terminals

If you selected **Normal(SB/FH)**, **Normal(SB/FW)** or **Speaker B** at *Speaker system setting* on page 62 , you can switch between speakers using the **SPEAKERS** button. If you selected **Front Bi-Amp** or **ZONE 2**, the button will simply switch your main speaker terminals on or off.

● **Use SPEAKERS on the front panel to select a speaker system setting.**

As mentioned above, if you have selected **Front Bi-Amp** or **ZONE 2**, the button will simply switch your main speaker terminal (A) on or off. Press repeatedly to choose a speaker terminal option:

When you select **Normal(SB/FH)***, you can select from:*

- **SP: SB/FH ON** – Surround back or front height channels are added to the front, center and surround channels (maximum 5 channels) and a maximum of 7 channels are output. The surround back and front height channels are switched automatically according to the audio input signal.
- **SP: SB ON** – Surround back channels are added to the front, center and surround channels (maximum 5 channels) and a maximum of 7 channels are output.
- **SP: FH ON** – Front height channels are added to the front, center and surround channels (maximum 5 channels) and a maximum of 7 channels are output.
- **SP: OFF** – No sound is output from the speakers.

When you select **Normal(SB/FW)***, you can select from:*

- **SP: SB/FW ON** – Surround back or front wide channels are added to the front, center and surround channels (maximum 5 channels) and a maximum of 7 channels are output. The surround back and front wide channels are switched automatically according to the audio input signal.
- **SP: SB ON** – Surround back channels are added to the front, center and surround channels (maximum 5 channels) and a maximum of 7 channels are output.
- **SP: FW ON** – Front wide channels are added to the front, center and surround channels (maximum 5 channels) and a maximum of 7 channels are output.
- **SP: OFF** – No sound is output from the speakers.

When you select **Speaker B***, you can select from:*

- **SP: A ON** – Sound is output from the A-speaker terminals (up to 7 channels (including surround back channels), depending on the source).
- **SP: B ON** – Sound is output from the two speakers connected to the B-speaker terminals. Multichannel sources will not be heard.
- **SP: A+B ON** – Sound is output from the A-speaker terminals (up to 5 channels, depending on the source), the two speakers connected to the B-speaker terminals, and the subwoofer. The sound from the B-speaker terminals will be the same as the sound from the A-speaker terminals (multichannel sources will be downmixed to 2 channels).
- **SP: OFF** – No sound is output from the speakers.

Note

- The subwoofer output depends on the settings you made in *Manual speaker setup* on page 62 . However, if **SP: B ON** is selected above, no sound is heard from the subwoofer (the LFE channel is not downmixed).
- All speaker systems (except **Speaker B** connections) are switched off when headphones are connected.

Using the MULTI-ZONE controls

The following steps use the front panel controls to adjust the sub zone volume and select sources. See *MULTI-ZONE remote controls* on page 47 .

1 Press MULTI-ZONE ON/OFF on the front panel.

Each press selects a MULTI-ZONE option:

- **ZONE 2 ON** – Switches the MULTI-ZONE feature on
- **MULTI ZONE OFF** – Switches the MULTI-ZONE feature off

The **MULTI-ZONE** indicator lights when the MULTI-ZONE control has been switched ON.

2 Press MULTI-ZONE CONTROL on the front panel.

- When the receiver is on, make sure that any operations for the sub zone are done while ZONE 2 shows in the display. If this is not showing, the front panel controls affect the main zone only.

3 Use the INPUT SELECTOR dial to select the source for the sub zone.

For example, **ZONE 2 CD-R** sends the source connected to the **CD-R/TAPE** inputs to the sub room (**ZONE 2**) .

- If you select **TUNER**, you can use the tuner controls to select a preset station (see *Saving station presets* on page 30 if you're unsure how to do this). The tuner cannot be tuned to more than one station at a time. Therefore, changing the station in one zone also changes the station in the other zone. Please be careful not to change stations when recording a radio broadcast.

4 When Speaker System is set to ZONE 2, use the MASTER VOLUME dial to adjust the volume for the sub zone.

5 When you're finished, press MULTI-ZONE CONTROL again to return to the main zone controls.

You can also press **MULTI-ZONE ON/OFF** on the front panel to switch off all output to the sub zone.

- You won't be able to switch the main zone off completely unless you've switched off the MULTI-ZONE control first.
- If you don't plan to use the MULTI-ZONE feature for a while, turn off the power in both the sub and main rooms so that this receiver is in standby.

MULTI-ZONE remote controls

Press the remote control's **ZONE 2** to operate the ZONE 2.

The following table shows the possible MULTI-ZONE remote controls:

Button(s)	What it does
⏻	Switches on/off power in the sub zone.
INPUT SELECT	Use to select the input function in the sub zone.

Button(s)	What it does
Input function buttons	Use to select the input function directly (this may not work for some functions) in the sub zone.
MASTER VOLUME +/– <a>	Use to set the listening volume in the sub zone.
MUTE <a>	Mutes the sound or restores the sound if it has been muted (adjusting the volume also restores the sound).

a You can only use this button when **Speaker System** is set to **ZONE 2**.

Making an audio or a video recording

You can make an audio or a video recording from the built-in tuner, or from an audio or video source connected to the receiver (such as a CD player or TV).

Keep in mind you can't make a digital recording from an analog source or vice-versa, so make sure the components you are recording to/from are hooked up in the same way (see *Connecting your equipment* on page 10 for more on connections).

- The receiver's volume, Audio parameters (the tone controls, for example), and surround effects have no effect on the recorded signal.
- Some digital sources are copy-protected, and can only be recorded in analog.
- Some video sources are copy-protected. These cannot be recorded.

Since the video converter is not available when making recordings (from the video **OUT** jacks) make sure to use the same type of video cable for connecting your recorder as you used to connect your video source (the one you want to record) to this receiver. For example, you must connect your recorder using Component video if your source has also been connected using Component video.

1 Select the source you want to record.

Use the input function buttons (or **INPUT SELECT**).

2 Prepare the source you want to record.

Tune to the radio station, load the CD, video, DVD etc.

3 Select the input signal according to the signal to be recorded.

Use the remote control's **SIGNAL SEL** button.

4 Prepare the recorder.

Insert a blank tape, MD, video etc. into the recording device and set the recording levels. Refer to the instructions that came with the recorder if you are unsure how to do this. Most video recorders set the audio recording level automatically-check the component's instruction manual if you're unsure.

5 Start recording, then start playback of the source component.

Reducing the level of an analog signal

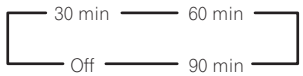
The input attenuator lowers the input level of an analog signal when it's too strong. You can use this if you find that the **OVER** indicator lights often or you can hear distortion in the sound. The attenuator isn't available with digital sources, or when using the Stream Direct (ANALOG DIRECT) modes.

● **Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode, then press A.ATT to switch the input attenuator on or off.**

Using the sleep timer

The sleep timer switches the receiver into standby after a specified amount of time so you can fall asleep without worrying about the receiver being left on all night. Use the remote control to set the sleep timer.

● **Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode, then press SLEEP repeatedly to set the sleep time.**



- You can check the remaining sleep time at any time by pressing **SLEEP** once. Pressing repeatedly will cycle through the sleep options again.
- The sleep timer is valid for all zones. If any zone is on, the sleep timer continues functioning.

Dimming the display

You can choose between four brightness levels for the front panel display. Note that when selecting sources, the display automatically brightens for a few seconds.

● **Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode, then press DIMMER repeatedly to change the brightness of the front panel display.**

- You can also choose to turn the display off. In this case, the **FL OFF** indicator lights.

Checking your system settings

Use the status display screen to check your current settings for features such as surround back channel processing and your current MCACC preset.

1 Press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode, then press STATUS to check the system settings.

The front panel display shows each of the following settings for three seconds each: **Input Source → Sampling Frequency → MCACC preset → ZONE 2 input**.

2 When you're finished, press STATUS again to switch off the display.

Resetting the system

Use this procedure to reset all the receiver's settings to the factory default. Use the front panel controls to do this. Set MULTI-ZONE to **MULTI ZONE OFF**.

- Disconnect the iPod and USB memory device from the receiver beforehand.
- Set the **Control** with HDMI to **OFF** (see *HDMI Setup* on page 41).

1 Switch the receiver into standby.

2 While holding down ENTER on the front panel, press ⏻ STANDBY/ON.

The display shows **RESET ◄ NO ►**.

3 Select 'RESET' using PRESET ⬅/➡, then press ENTER on the front panel.

The display shows **RESET? OK**.

4 Press ENTER to confirm.

OK appears in the display to indicate that the receiver has been reset to the factory default settings.

- Note that all settings will be saved, even if the receiver is unplugged.

Default system settings

Setting		Default
Digital Video Converter		ON
SPEAKERS		SB/FH
Speaker System		Normal(SB/FH)
Speaker Setting	Front	SMALL
	Center	SMALL
	FH/FW	SMALL
	Surr	SMALL
	SB	SMALLx2
	SW	YES
Surround Position		IN REAR
Crossover		80 Hz
X-Curve		OFF
DIMMER		Medium bright
Inputs		
See *Input function default and possible settings* on page 25 .		
HDMI		
HDMI Audio		Amp
Control		ON
Control Mode		ALL
Display Power Off		YES
DSP		
Power On Level		LAST
Volume Limit		OFF
Mute Level		FULL
Phase Control		ON
Auto Sound Retriever	iPod/USB, HOME MEDIA GALLERY, ADAPTER PORT input function	ON
	Other input functions	OFF
Sound Delay		0.0 frame

Setting		Default
Dual Mono		CH1
DRC		AUTO
SACD Gain		0 dB
LFE Attenuate		0 dB
Auto delay		OFF
Digital Safety		OFF
Effect Level	ExtendedStereo	90
	Other modes	50
DD PL II Music Options	Center Width	3
	Dimension	0
	Panorama	OFF
Neo:6 Options	Center Image	Neo:6 MUSIC: 3 Neo:6 CINEMA: 10
DD PL IIz Options	Height Gain	MID
All Inputs	Listening Mode (2 ch/multi ch)	AUTO SURROUND
	Listening Mode (Headphones)	STEREO
See also *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 for other default DSP settings.		
MCACC		
MCACC Position Memory		M1: MEMORY 1
Channel Level (M1 to M6)		0.0 dB
Speaker Distance (M1 to M6)		3.00 m
Standing Wave (M1 to M6)	ATT of all channels/filters	0.0 dB
	SWch Wide Trim	0.0 dB
EQ Data (M1 to M6)	All channels/bands	0.0 dB
	EQ Wide Trim	0.0 dB

Controlling the rest of your system

About the Remote Setup menu

The Remote Setup mode is set by pressing the number button while pressing **RCU SETUP**. The different items on the Remote Setup menu are described below. For their setting procedures, refer to the explanations for the respective items.

Setting	What it does
Preset recall	Preset codes can be set for the various input functions. The remote control codes of a number of other devices (including products of other brands) are preset in the remote control to allow these devices to be operated. See *Selecting preset codes directly* on page 50 .
Code learning	If the desired operations cannot be performed even though you have set the preset codes, the remote control signals of other devices can be learned directly. See *Programming signals from other remote controls* on page 51 .
Multi operation	A series of the remote control operations for starting listening or viewing can be programmed. Multiple remote control codes can be set for the different input functions. See *Multi Operation and System Off* on page 52 .
System off	This is a function for automatically turning off the power of devices connected to the receiver. Multiple remote control codes can be set, as desired. See *Multi Operation and System Off* on page 52 .
Direct function	This is a setting for changing only the remote control unit's operation screen, without changing the receiver's input, when the remote control unit's input function buttons are pressed. This is convenient for using the remote control unit for devices not connected to the receiver. See *Direct function* on page 51 .
Erase learning	This function is used to erase remote control codes that have been learned. Codes learned for the different input functions can be erased individually. See *Erasing one of the remote control button settings* on page 51 .
Reset function	This is a function for resetting preset codes that have been set. Key resetting can be done for individual input functions. See *Erasing all learnt settings that are in one input function* on page 51 .
All reset	This is a function for resetting all remote control unit settings you have made to the defaults set upon shipment from the factory. See *Resetting the remote control settings* on page 53 .
Change RC mode	If you have multiple Pioneer receivers, amplifiers, etc., this setting can be used to prevent other units from operating simultaneously when the remote control unit is operated. See *Operating multiple receivers* on page 50 .

Note

- You can cancel or exit any of the steps by pressing **RCU SETUP**.
- After one minute of inactivity, the remote automatically exits the operation.

Operating multiple receivers

Up to four receivers can be operated discretely using this receiver's remote control when using multiple receivers, provided they are of the same model as this receiver. The receiver to be operated is switched by inputting the preset code to set the remote control setting.

- Set the remote modes on the receivers before using this function (see *Remote Control Mode Setup* on page 66).

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '4' for three seconds.

Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

2 Press the number button for the receiver ("Receiver 1" to "Receiver 4") you wish to operate.

For example, to operate "Receiver 2", press '**2**'.
If the LED lights for one second and continues to flash, the setting has been successfully completed.
When the preset code is input, the LED flashes three times to indicate that the setting has failed.

Setting the remote to control other components

Most components can be assigned to one of the input function buttons (such as **DVD** or **CD**) using the component's manufacturer preset code stored in the remote.
However, there are cases where only certain functions may be controllable after assigning the proper preset code, or the codes for the manufacturer in the remote control will not work for the model that you are using.

If you can't find a preset code that matches the component you want to control, you can still teach the remote individual commands from another remote control (see *Programming signals from other remote controls* on page 51).

- For greater convenience, assign the TV connected to the **MONITOR OUT** terminal to the **TV CTRL** button, and assign your satellite/cable receiver or set-top box connected to the **TV/SAT** input terminal to the **TV/SAT** input button. If a single device is connected to both terminals, that device should be assigned to both the **TV CTRL** and **TV/SAT** input buttons.
- Devices may be assigned to the following input function buttons.

Selecting preset codes directly

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '1' for three seconds.

Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

2 Press the input function button for the component you want to control.

When assigning preset codes to **TV CONTROL**, press **TV CTRL** here.
The LED blinks once and flashes continuously.

3 Use the number buttons to enter the 4-digit preset code.

See *Preset code list* on page 85 .

If the LED lights for one second and continues to flash, the setting has been successfully completed.

When the preset code is fully input, the LED flashes three times to indicate that the setting has failed. If this happens, enter the 4-digit preset code again.

4 Repeat steps 2 through 3 for the other components you want to control.

To try out the remote control, switch the component on or off (into standby) by pressing ⏻ **SOURCE**. If it doesn't seem to work, select the next code from the list (if there is one).

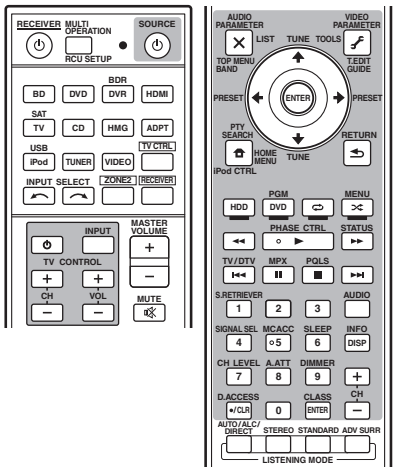
5 Press RCU SETUP to exit the preset setup mode.

Programming signals from other remote controls

If the preset code for your component is not available, or the available preset codes do not operate correctly, you can program signals from the remote control of another component. This can also be used to program additional operations (buttons not covered in the presets) after assigning a preset code.

The remote can store about 120 preset codes from other components (this has been tested with codes of Pioneer format only).

Certain buttons represent operations that cannot be learned from other remote controls. The buttons available are shown below:



1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '2' for three seconds.

Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

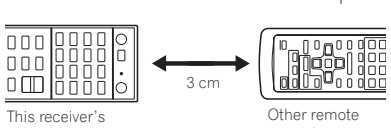
2 Press the input function button for the component you want to control.

The LED blinks once and flashes continuously.

3 Point the two remote controls towards each other, then press the button that will be doing the learning on this receiver's remote control.

The LED flashes once, then stops flashing, remaining lit.

- The remote controls should be 3 cm apart.



4 Press the corresponding button on the other remote control that is sending (teaching) the signal to this receiver's remote control.

If the LED lights for one second and continues to flash, the setting has been successfully completed.

- If the LED flashes for five seconds, it means the memory is full. See *Erasing all learnt settings that are in one input function* on page 51 to erase a programmed button you're not using to free up more memory (note that some signals may take more memory than others).
- Note that interference from TVs or other devices will sometimes result in the remote control learning the wrong signal.
- Some commands from other remote controls cannot be learned, but in most cases the remotes just need to be moved closer together or farther apart.

5 To program additional signals for the current component repeat steps 3 and 4.

To program signals for another component, exit and repeat steps 2 through 4.

6 Press RCU SETUP to exit the programming mode.

Erasing one of the remote control button settings

This erases one of the buttons you have programmed and restores the button to the factory default.

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '7' for three seconds.

Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

2 Press the input function button corresponding to the command to be erased, then press ENTER.

The LED flashes once.

3 Press and hold the button to be erased for three seconds.

If the LED lights for one second, the erasing has been successfully completed.

4 Repeat step 3 to erase other buttons.

5 Press RCU SETUP to exit the erasing mode.

Erasing all learnt settings that are in one input function

This operation erases all the operational settings of other devices that have been programmed in one input function, and restores the factory default.

This function is handy for erasing all data programmed for devices no longer being used.

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '9' for three seconds.

Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

2 Press and hold the input function button corresponding to the command to be erased for three seconds.

If the LED lights for one second, the erasing has been successfully completed.

Direct function

- Default setting: **On**

You can use the direct function feature to control one component using the remote control while at the same time, using your receiver to playback a different component. This could let

you, for example, use the remote control to set up and listen to a CD on the receiver, and then use the remote control to rewind a tape in your VCR while you continue to listen to your CD player.
When direct function is on, any component you select (using the input function buttons) will be selected by both the receiver and the remote control. When you turn direct function off, you can operate the remote control without affecting the receiver.

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '5' for three seconds.
Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.
- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

2 Press the input function button for the component you want to control.

3 Press '1' (On) or '0' (Off) to switch the direct function mode.
If the LED lights for one second and continues to flash, the setting has been successfully completed.
If the LED flashes three times, the setting has failed.

4 Press RCU SETUP to exit the setup.

Multi Operation and System Off

The Multi operation feature allows you to program a series of up to 5 commands for the components in your system.
- Be sure to call up the preset codes of devices or perform programming signals for other remote controls before multi operation memory programming (page 51).

The Multi operation feature makes it easy to perform the following operations by pressing just two buttons.
Press **MULTI OPERATION** and then the **DVD** input function button to:
1. Switch this receiver on.
2. Switch this receiver's input to DVD.
3. Transmit a sequence of up to five programmed commands.

Similar to Multi operations, System off allows you to use two buttons to stop and switch off a series of components in your system at the same time. Only one System off operation sequence may be programmed.
Press **MULTI OPERATION** and then ⏻ **SOURCE** to:
1. Transmit a sequence of up to five programmed commands.
2. Switch off all Pioneer devices including the receiver (except DVD recorders and VCRs).

For greater convenience, program this receiver to perform power on/off and playback operations on non-Pioneer devices as well. (The signals for Pioneer devices described above are not contingent on programming for non-Pioneer devices.)
The buttons that can be programmed using Multi operation or System off are the same buttons as those that can be programmed for other remote controls (see *Programming signals from other remote controls* on page 51).

Note
- Before Multi operation and System off will work correctly, you must setup the remote to work with your TV and other components (see *Setting the remote to control other components* on page 50 for more on this).
- Some units may take some time to power up, in which case multiple operations may not be possible.
- Power on and off commands only work with components that have a standby mode.
- Some remote controllers for other manufacturers' devices use the same signals for switching the power on and off. In some cases, even if this receiver is programmed to perform these commands, power to the non-Pioneer devices may not be switched on and off correctly. Program the receiver to perform these commands if the non-Pioneer device uses separate signals for power on/off.

Programming a multi-operation or a shutdown sequence

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '3' for three seconds.
Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.
- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

2 Press the input function button (or ⏻ SOURCE button).
For Multi operations, press the input function you wish to program (for example, if you want to start the sequence by switching on your DVD player, press **DVD**).
- With Multi operation, the **HDMI** and **TV CTRL** settings cannot be made. For other settable input functions, see *Setting the remote to control other components* on page 50 .

For System off, press the ⏻ **SOURCE** button.
The LED blinks twice and flashes continuously.

3 If necessary, press the input function button for the component whose command you want to input.
This is only necessary if the command is for a new component (input function).

4 Select the button for the command you want to input.
The LED blinks once and flashes continuously.
- You don't need to program the receiver to switch on or off. This is done automatically.

With Pioneer components, you don't need to program the power to switch off in a shutdown sequence (except DVD recorders).

5 Repeat steps 3 to 4 to program a sequence of up to five commands.
If you press **RCU SETUP** before programming is completed, commands programmed up to that point will be stored.

6 Press RCU SETUP to exit the programming mode.

Using multi operations

1 Press MULTI OPERATION.
Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

2 Within five seconds, press an input function button that has been set up with a multi operation.
The receiver switches on (if it was in standby) and the programmed multi operation is performed automatically.

Using System off

1 Press MULTI OPERATION.
Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

2 Within five seconds, press ⏻ SOURCE.
The command sequence you programmed will run, then all Pioneer components will switch off, followed by this receiver (switch of all the zones becomes off).
- In order to avoid accidently switching off a DVD recorder that is currently recording, no DVD recorder power off codes are sent.

Erasing the settings for the multi-operation

This erases all the settings programmed in the remote control for the multi-operation.

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '8' for three seconds.

Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

- To cancel the preset setup mode press **RCU SETUP**.

2 Press the input function button containing the program you want to cancel or the ⏻ SOURCE button for three seconds.

If the LED lights for one second, the erasing has been successfully completed.

Resetting the remote control settings

Use this procedure to reset all the remote control's settings to the factory default.

- When preset codes are set, all the signals learned in the input function buttons are cleared. This function is convenient when you want to reset some but not all of input function buttons.

1 Press and hold RCU SETUP, then press '0' for three seconds.

Release the button after the LED flashes once. The LED continues to flash.

2 Press and hold the ENTER button for three seconds.

If the LED lights for one second, the erasing has been successfully completed.

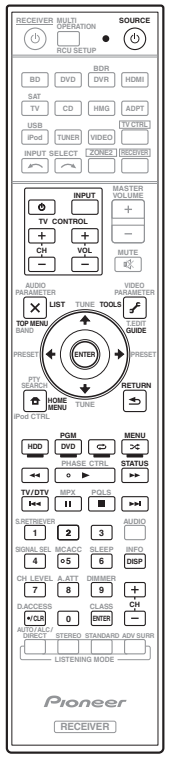
Default preset codes

Input function button	Preset code
DVD	2248
BD	2246
DVR/BDR	2238
HDMI	2247
TV/SAT	0186
CD	5066
VIDEO	1077
TV CTRL	0186

Controlling components

This remote control can control components after entering the proper codes (see *Setting the remote to control other components* on page 50 for more on this). Use the input function buttons to select the component.

- The **TV CONTROL** buttons on the remote control are dedicated to control the TV assigned to the **TV CTRL** button. If you have two TVs, assign the main TV to the **TV CTRL** button.



TV and Audio/Video components

Button(s)	TV	TV (Monitor)	BD/DVD	HDD/BDR/ DVR	VCR	SAT/ CATV
⏻ **SOURCE**	POWER ON/ OFF	POWER ON/ OFF	POWER ON/ OFF	POWER ON/ OFF	POWER ON/ OFF	POWER ON/ OFF
Number buttons	*numerics*	*numerics*	*numerics*	*numerics*	*numerics*	*numerics*
● *(dot)*	● *(dot)*	KURO LINK	CLEAR	+	—	∗
ENTER (CLASS)	CH ENTER	CH ENTER	ENTER	ENTER	—	ENTER
✕	EXIT/INFO	EXIT	TOP MENU	TOP MENU	—	LIST
🔧	TOOLS/ GUIDE/EPG	USER MENU	TOOLS <a>	GUIDE	—	GUIDE
↑/↓/←/→	↑/↓/←/→	↑/↓/←/→	↑/↓/←/→	↑/↓/←/→	—	↑/↓/←/→
ENTER	ENTER	ENTER	ENTER	ENTER	—	ENTER
🏠	HOME MENU	HOME MENU	HOME MENU	HOME MENU	—	HOME MENU
⮌	RETURN	RETURN	RETURN	RETURN	—	RETURN
HDD *(Red)*	*Red*	*Red*	—	HDD	—	*Red*
DVD *(Green)*	*Green*	*Green*	—	DVD	—	*Green*
🔁 *(Yellow)*	*Yellow*	*Yellow*	—	VCR	—	*Yellow*
🔀 *(Blue)*	*Blue*	*Blue*	MENU	MENU	—	*Blue*
▶	—	—	▶	▶	▶	▶
⏸	—	AUTO SETUP	⏸	⏸	⏸	⏸
■	—	FREEZE	■	■	■	■
◀◀	—	—	◀◀	◀◀	◀◀	◀◀
▶▶	—	—	▶▶	▶▶	▶▶	▶▶
⏮	ANT	AV SELECTION	⏮	⏮	—	⏮
⏭	—	SCREEN SIZE	⏭	⏭	—	⏭
AUDIO	AUDIO	AUDIO	AUDIO	AUDIO	AUDIO	AUDIO
DISP	DISPLAY	DISPLAY	DISPLAY	DISPLAY	—	DISPLAY/ INFO
CH +/–	CH +/–	CH +/–	OUTPUT RESOLUTION +/– <a>	CH +/–	CH +/–	CH +/–

a Controls for BD.

Audio/Video components

Button(s)	LD	CD/CD-R/ SACD	MD/DAT	TAPE
⏻ **SOURCE**	POWER ON/OFF	POWER ON/OFF	POWER ON/OFF	POWER ON/OFF
Number buttons	*numerics*	*numerics*	*numerics*	—
● *(dot)*	+10	>10/CLEAR	CLEAR <a>	CLEAR
ENTER (CLASS)	ENTER	DISC/ENTER	OPEN/CLOSE <a>	ENTER
✕	TOP MENU	—	—	MS←
🔧	—	LEGATO LINK <b>	—	MS→
↑/↓/←/→	↑/↓/←/→	—	—	II/■/◄◄/►►
ENTER	ENTER	—	—	—
⌂	—	SACD SETUP <b>	—	—
↩	RETURN	—	—	—
►	►	►	►	►
II	II	II	II	II
■	■	■	■	■
◄◄	◄◄	◄◄	◄◄	◄◄
►►	►►	►►	►►	►►
I◄◄	I◄◄	I◄◄	I◄◄	I◄◄
►►I	►►I	►►I	►►I	►►I
AUDIO	AUDIO	PURE AUDIO <b>	—	—
DISP	DISPLAY/INFO	TIME <b>	—	—

a Controls for MD.
b Controls for SACD.

TV (Projector)

Button(s)	TV (Projector)
⏻ **SOURCE**	POWER ON
1	MOVIE
2	STANDARD
3	DYNAMIC
4	USER1
5	USER2
6	USER3
7	COLOR+
8	SHARP+
9	GAMMA
0	COLOR–
● *(dot)*	SHARP–
ENTER (CLASS)	COLOR TEMP
✕	EXIT
🔧	INFO
↑/↓/←/→	↑/↓/←/→
ENTER	ENTER
⌂	TEST
↩	HIDE
⤮	MENU
◄◄	HDMI1
►	HDMI2
►►	COMP.
I◄◄	VIDEO
II	S-VIDEO
■	BRIGHT–
►►I	BRIGHT+
AUDIO	POWER OFF
DISP	ASPECT
CH +/–	CONTRAST+/–

The Advanced MCACC menu

Making receiver settings from the Advanced MCACC menu

The Advanced MCACC (Multi Channel ACoustic Calibration) system was developed in Pioneer's laboratories with the aim of making it possible for home users to perform adjustments of the same level as in a studio easily and with high precision. The acoustic characteristics of the listening environment are measured and the frequency response is calibrated accordingly to allow high precision, automatic analysis and optimal calibration of the sound field to bring it closer to a studio environment than ever before. Furthermore, while it was previously difficult to eliminate standing waves, this receiver is equipped with a standing wave control function using a unique process to perform acoustic analysis and reduce their influence.
This section describes how to calibrate the sound field automatically and fine-adjust the sound field data manually.

1 Press ⏻ RECEIVER to switch on the receiver and your TV.

Make sure that the TV's video input is set to this receiver.

2 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ⬆/⬇/⬅/➡ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

- Press **HOME MENU** at any time to exit the **Home Menu**.

3 Select 'Advanced MCACC' from the Home Menu, then press ENTER.

4 Select the setting you want to adjust.

- **Full Auto MCACC** – See *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 for a quick and effective automatic surround setup.
- **Auto MCACC** – See *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 for a more detailed MCACC setup.
- **Manual MCACC** – Fine-tunes your speaker settings and customizes the Acoustic Calibration EQ (see *Manual MCACC setup* on page 58).
- **Demo** – No settings are saved and no errors occur. When the speakers are connected to this receiver, the test tone is output repeatedly. Press **RETURN** to cancel the test tone.

Automatic MCACC (Expert)

If your setup requires more detailed settings than those provided in *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 , you can customize your setup options below. You can calibrate your system differently for up to six different MCACC presets, which are useful if you have different listening positions depending on the type of source (for example, watching movies from a sofa, or playing a video game close to the TV).

Important

- Make sure the microphone/speakers are not moved during the Auto MCACC Setup.
- The screen saver will automatically appear after five minutes of inactivity.

CAUTION

- The test tones used in the Auto MCACC Setup are output at high volume.

1 Select 'Auto MCACC' from the Advanced MCACC menu, then press ENTER.

If the **Advanced MCACC** screen is not displayed, refer to *Making receiver settings from the Advanced MCACC menu* on page 56 .

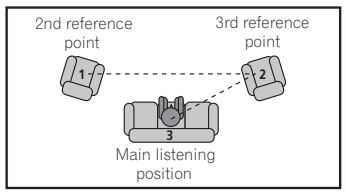
2 Select the parameters you want to set.

Use ⬆/⬇ to select the item, then use ⬅/➡ to set.

- **Auto MCACC** – The default is **ALL** (recommended), but you can limit the system calibration to only one setting (to save time) if you want.
  - — When data measurement is taken (after selecting **ALL** or **Keep SP System**), the reverb characteristics data (both before- and after-calibration) that this receiver had been storing will be overwritten.
  - — When measurement is performed with other than **SYMMETRY** (after selecting **ALL** or **Keep SP System**), the reverberation characteristics after calibration cannot be predicted, so the graph for the characteristics after calibration ("After") cannot be displayed. If you will need to display the graph for the characteristics after calibration ("After"), take the measurement using the **EQ Professional** menu in the **Manual MCACC** setup (page 58).
  - — The **EQ Pro & S-Wave** measurement is also taken when **ALL** or **Keep SP System** is selected. See *Acoustic Calibration EQ Professional* on page 59 for more on this.
  - — Either effect of Acoustic Calibration EQ Professional and Standing Wave can be switched on and off in the respective MCACC preset. For details, see *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .
- **EQ Type** (only available when the **Auto MCACC** Menu above is **EQ Pro & S-Wave**) – This determines how the frequency balance is adjusted.

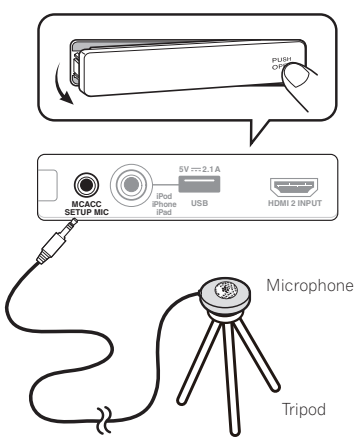
After a single calibration is performed, each of the following three correction curves can be stored separately in the MCACC memory. **SYMMETRY** implements symmetric correction for each pair of left and right speakers to flatten the frequency-amplitude characteristics. **ALL CH ADJ** is a 'flat' setting where all the speakers are set individually so no special weighting is given to any one channel. **FRONT ALIGN** sets all speakers in accordance with the front speaker settings (no equalization is applied to the front left and right channels). If you selected **ALL** or **Keep SP System** as your **Auto MCACC** menu, you can specify the MCACC preset where you want to save the **SYMMETRY**, **ALL CH ADJ** and **FRONT ALIGN** settings.

- **THX Speaker** (only available when the **Auto MCACC** Menu above is **ALL** or **Speaker Setting**) – Select **YES** when using THX speakers (all speakers other than the front speakers are set to **SMALL**). In other cases, leave at **NO**.
- **STAND.WAVE Multi-Point** (only available when the **Auto MCACC** Menu above is **EQ Pro & S-Wave**) – In addition to measurements at the listening position, you can use two more reference points for which test tones will be analyzed for standing waves. This is useful if you want to get a balanced 'flat' calibration for several seating positions in your listening area. Place the microphone at the reference point indicated on-screen and note that the last microphone placement will be at your main listening position:



3 Connect the microphone to the MCACC SETUP MIC jack on the front panel.

Make sure there are no obstacles between the speakers and the microphone.



If you have a tripod, use it to place the microphone so that it's about ear level at your normal listening position. If you do not have a tripod, use some other object to install the microphone.

- It may not be possible to measure correctly if the microphone is placed on a table, sofa, etc.

4 When you're finished setting the options, select START then press ENTER.

5 Follow the instructions on-screen.

6 Wait for the Auto MCACC Setup to finish outputting test tones.

A progress report is displayed on-screen while the receiver outputs test tones to determine the speakers present in your setup. Try to be as quiet as possible while it's doing this.

- With error messages (such as **Too much ambient noise!** or **Check microphone.**), select **RETRY** after checking for ambient noise (see *Problems when using the Auto MCACC Setup* on page 24) and verifying the mic connection. If there doesn't seem to be a problem, you can simply select **GO NEXT** and continue.
- Do not adjust the volume during the test tones. This may result in incorrect speaker settings.

7 If necessary, confirm the speaker configuration in the GUI screen.

The configuration shown on-screen should reflect the actual speakers you have.

If no operations are performed for 10 seconds while the speaker configuration check screen is being displayed, the Auto MCACC Setup will resume automatically. In this case, you don't need to select '**OK**' and press **ENTER** in step 8.

- If you see an **ERR** message (or the speaker configuration displayed isn't correct), there may be a problem with the speaker connection. If selecting **RETRY** doesn't work, turn off the power and check the speaker connections. If there doesn't seem to be a problem, you can simply use ⬆/⬇ to select the speaker and ⬅/➡ to change the setting and continue.
- If the speaker is not pointed to the microphone (listening position) or when using speakers that affect the phase (dipole speakers, reflective speakers, etc.), **Reverse Phase** may be displayed even if the speakers are properly connected.

  If **Reverse Phase** is displayed, the speaker's wiring (+ and –) may be inverted. Check the speaker connections.
  - — If the connections were wrong, turn off the power, disconnect the power cord, then reconnect properly. After this, perform the Auto MCACC procedure again.
  - — If the connections were right, select **GO NEXT** and continue.

8 Make sure 'OK' is selected, then press ENTER.

A progress report is displayed on-screen while the receiver outputs more test tones to determine the optimum receiver settings.

Again, try to be as quiet as possible while this is happening. It may take 3 to 7 minutes.

- If you selected a **STAND.WAVE Multi-Point** setup (in step 2), you will be asked to place the mic at the 2nd and 3rd reference points before finally placing it at your main listening position.

9 The Auto MCACC Setup procedure is completed and the Advanced MCACC menu reappears automatically.

The settings made in the Auto MCACC Setup should give you excellent surround sound from your system, but it is also possible to adjust these settings manually using the **Manual MCACC** setup menu (starting below) or **Manual SP Setup** menu (starting on page 62).

- Depending on the characteristics of your room, sometimes identical speakers with cone sizes of around 12 cm will end up with different size settings. You can correct the setting manually using the *Manual speaker setup* on page 62 .
- The subwoofer distance setting may be farther than the actual distance from the listening position. This setting should be accurate (taking delay and room characteristics into account) and generally does not need to be changed.
- If Auto MCACC Setup measurement results are incorrect due to the interaction of the speakers and viewing environment, we recommend adjusting the settings manually.

You can also choose to view the settings by selecting individual parameters from the **MCACC Data Check** screen (see *Checking MCACC Data* on page 60).

Press **RETURN** after you have finished checking each screen. When you're finished, select **RETURN** to go back to the **Home Menu**.

Be sure to disconnect the microphone from this receiver upon completion of the Auto MCACC Setup.

Manual MCACC setup

You can use the settings in the **Manual MCACC** setup menu to make detailed adjustments when you're more familiar with the system. Before making these settings, you should have already completed *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 .
You only need to make these settings once (unless you change the placement of your current speaker system or add new speakers).

CAUTION

- The test tones used in the **Manual MCACC** setup are output at high volume.

Important

- Press the **MCACC** button while the pertinent setup screens are displayed to select MCACC presets.
- For some of the settings below, you'll have to connect the setup microphone to the front panel and place it about ear level at your normal listening position. Press **HOME MENU** to display the **Home Menu** before you connect the microphone to this receiver.
- See *Problems when using the Auto MCACC Setup* on page 24 for notes regarding high background noise levels and other possible interference.
- If you're using a subwoofer, switch it on and turn up the volume to the middle position.

1 Select 'Manual MCACC' from the Advanced MCACC menu.
See *Making receiver settings from the Advanced MCACC menu* on page 56 if you're not already at this screen.

2 Select the setting you want to adjust.
If you're doing this for the first time, you might want to make these settings in order.

- **Fine Channel Level** – Make fine adjustments to the overall balance of your speaker system (see *Fine Channel Level* on page 58).
- **Fine SP Distance** – Make precise delay settings for your speaker system (see *Fine Speaker Distance* on page 58).
- **Standing Wave** – Control overly resonant low frequencies in your listening room (see *Standing Wave* on page 58).

The last two settings are specifically for customizing the parameters explained in *Acoustic Calibration EQ Adjust* on page 59 :

- **EQ Adjust** – Manually adjust the frequency balance of your speaker system while listening to test tones (see *Acoustic Calibration EQ Adjust* on page 59).
- **EQ Professional** – Calibrate your system based on the direct sound coming from the speakers and make detailed settings according to your room's reverb characteristics (see *Acoustic Calibration EQ Professional* on page 59).

Fine Channel Level

• Default setting: **0.0dB** (all channels)
You can achieve better surround sound by properly adjusting the overall balance of your speaker system. You can adjust the Channel Level of each speaker in 0.5 dB increments. The following setting can help you make detailed adjustments that you may not achieve using the *Manual speaker setup* on page 62 .

1 Select 'Fine Channel Level' from the Manual MCACC setup menu.
The volume increases to the 0.0 dB reference level.

2 Adjust the level of the left channel.
This will be the reference speaker level, so you may want to keep the level around **0.0dB** so that you'll have plenty of room to adjust the other speaker levels.

- After pressing **ENTER**, test tones will be output.

3 Select each channel in turn and adjust the levels (+/–12.0 dB) as necessary.
Use ⬅/➡ to adjust the volume of the speaker you selected to match the reference speaker. When it sounds like both tones are the same volume, press ⬇ to confirm and continue to the next channel.

- For comparison purposes, the reference speaker will change depending on which speaker you select.
- If you want to go back and adjust a channel, simply use ⬆/⬇ to select it.

4 When you're finished, press RETURN.
You will return to the **Manual MCACC** setup menu.

Fine Speaker Distance

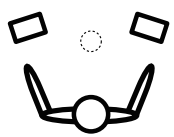
• Default setting: **3.00m** (all speakers)
For proper sound depth and separation with your system, it is necessary to add a slight bit of delay to some speakers so that all sounds will arrive at the listening position at the same time. You can adjust the distance of each speaker in 1 cm increments. The following setting can help you make detailed adjustments that you may not achieve using the *Manual speaker setup* on page 62 .

1 Select 'Fine SP Distance' from the Manual MCACC setup menu.

2 Adjust the distance of the left channel from the listening position.

3 Select each channel in turn and adjust the distance as necessary.
Use ⬅/➡ to adjust the delay of the speaker you selected to match the reference speaker.
Listen to the reference speaker and use it to measure the target channel. From the listening position, face the two speakers with your arms outstretched pointing at each speaker. Try to make the two tones sound as if they are arriving simultaneously at a position slightly in front of you and between your arm span.

- If you can't seem to achieve this by adjusting the distance setting, you may need to change the angle of your speakers very slightly.
- The subwoofer's test tone differs in tone from other channels. Adjust so that the sound of the subwoofer can be heard distinctly. Note that when adjusting the subwoofer, depending on the low frequency response of your speaker, it may be difficult to hear the change even when the setting is increased or decreased or when the position of the speaker is changed. Note that it may be difficult to compare this tone with the other speakers in your setup (depending on the low frequency response of the reference speaker).



When it sounds like the delay settings are matched up, press ⬇ to confirm and continue to the next channel.

- For comparison purposes, the reference speaker will change depending on which speaker you select.
- If you want to go back and adjust a channel, simply use ⬆/⬇ to select it.

4 When you're finished, press RETURN.
You will return to the **Manual MCACC** setup menu.

Standing Wave

• Default setting: **ON/ATT 0.0dB** (all filters)
Acoustic standing waves occur when, under certain conditions, sound waves from your speaker system resonate mutually with sound

waves reflected off the walls in your listening area. This can have a negative effect on the overall sound, especially at certain lower frequencies. Depending on speaker placement, your listening position, and ultimately the shape of your room, it results in an overly resonant ('boomy') sound. The Standing Wave Control uses filters to reduce the effect of overly resonant sounds in your listening area. During playback of a source, you can customize the filters used for Standing Wave Control for each of your MCACC presets.

- Standing Wave control filter settings cannot be changed during playback of sources using the HDMI connection.

1 Select 'Standing Wave' from the Manual MCACC setup menu.

2 Adjust the parameters for the Standing Wave Control.

- **Filter Channel** – Select the channel to which you will apply the filter(s): **MAIN** (all except center channel and subwoofer), **Center** or **SW** (subwoofer).
- **TRIM** (only available when the filter channel above is **SW**) – Adjust the subwoofer channel level (to compensate for the difference in output post-filter).
- **Freq** / **Q** / **ATT** – These are the filter parameters where **Freq** represents the frequency you will be targeting and **Q** is the bandwidth (the higher the Q, the narrower the bandwidth, or range) of the attenuation (**ATT**, the amount of reduction to the targeted frequency).

3 When you're finished, press RETURN.
You will return to the **Manual MCACC** setup menu.

Acoustic Calibration EQ Adjust

- Default setting: **ON**/**0.0dB** (all channels/bands)

Acoustic Calibration Equalization is a kind of room equalizer for your speakers (excluding the subwoofer). It works by measuring the acoustic characteristics of your room and neutralizing the ambient characteristics that can color the original source material (providing a 'flat' equalization setting). If you're not satisfied with the adjustment provided in *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 or *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 , you can also adjust these settings manually to get a frequency balance that suits your tastes.

1 Select 'EQ Adjust' from the Manual MCACC setup menu.

2 Select the channel(s) you want and adjust to your liking.
Use ↑/↓ to select the channel.
Use ←/→ to select the frequency and ↑/↓ to boost or cut the EQ. When you're finished, go back to the top of the screen and press ← to return to **Ch**, then use ↑/↓ to select the channel.

- The **OVER!** indicator shows in the display if the frequency adjustment is too drastic and might distort. If this happens, bring the level down until **OVER!** disappears from the display.

3 When you're finished, press RETURN.
You will return to the **Manual MCACC** setup menu.

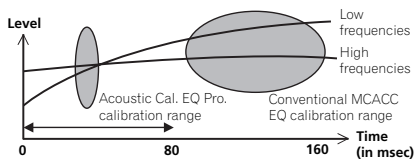
Note

- Changing the frequency curve of one channel too drastically will affect the overall balance. If the speaker balance seems uneven, you can raise or lower channel levels using test tones with the **TRIM** feature. Use ←/→ to select **TRIM**, then use ↑/↓ to raise or lower the channel level for the current speaker.

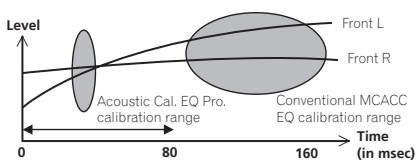
Acoustic Calibration EQ Professional

This setup minimizes the unwanted effects of room reverberation by allowing you to calibrate your system based on the direct sound coming from the speakers.
Performing the Acoustic Calibration EQ Professional procedure is effective when the lower frequencies seem overly reverberant in your listening room (i.e. it sounds 'boomy') as shown at Type A below, or when different channels seem to exhibit different reverb characteristics as shown at Type B.

- **Type A: Reverberance of high vs. low frequencies**



- **Type B: Reverb characteristics for different channels**



Using Acoustic Calibration EQ Professional

1 Select 'EQ Professional', then press ENTER.

2 Select an option and press ENTER.

- **Reverb Measurement** – Use this to measure the reverb characteristics before and after calibration.
- **Reverb View** – You can check the reverb measurements made for specified frequency ranges in each channel.
  - If the **Reverb View** procedure is performed after the *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 or **Reverb Measurement** operation, depending on the standing wave control setting, differences may appear on the reverb graph. With the **Auto MCACC** function, the reverberations are measured with the standing waves controlled, so the reverb characteristics graph shows the characteristics with the effect of the standing waves eliminated. By contrast, the **Reverb Measurement** function measures the reverberations without controlling the standing waves, so the graph indicates the reverb characteristics including the effect of the standing waves. If you wish to check the reverb characteristics of the room itself (with the standing waves as such), we recommend using the **Reverb Measurement** function.
- **Advanced EQ Setup** – Use this to select the time period that will be used for frequency adjustment and calibration, based on the reverb measurement of your listening area. Note that customizing system calibration using this setup will alter the settings you made in *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 or *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 and is not necessary if you're satisfied with these settings.

3 If you selected 'Reverb Measurement', select EQ ON or EQ OFF, and then START.
The following options determine how the reverb characteristics of your listening area are displayed in **Reverb View**:

- **EQ OFF** – You will see the reverb characteristics of your listening area without the equalization performed by this receiver (before calibration).
- **EQ ON** – You will see the reverb characteristics of your listening area with the equalization performed by this receiver (after calibration). Note that the EQ response may not appear entirely flat due to adjustments necessary for your listening area.
  - — The calibration corresponding to the currently selected MCACC preset will be used when **EQ ON** is selected. To use another MCACC preset, press **MCACC** to select the MCACC memory you want to store.
  - — After auto calibration with **EQ Type** : **SYMMETRY** (**Full Auto MCACC**, etc.), the graph for the inferred reverb characteristics can be displayed by selecting **Reverb View**. To display the actually measured reverb characteristics after EQ calibration, measure with **EQ ON**.

When the reverb measurement is finished, you can select **Reverb View** to see the results on-screen. See *Professional Calibration EQ graphical output* on page 72 for troubleshooting information.

4 If you selected 'Reverb View', you can check the reverb characteristics for each channel. Press RETURN when you're done.

The reverb characteristics are displayed when the **Full Auto MCACC** or **Reverb Measurement** measurements are conducted.

Use ←/→ to select the channel, frequency and calibration setting you want to check. Use ↑/↓ to go back and forth between the three.

The reverb characteristics graph before and after EQ calibration can be displayed by selecting **Calibration** : **Before** / **After**. Note that the markers on the vertical axis indicate decibels in 2 dB steps.

5 If 'Advanced EQ Setup' is selected, select the MCACC memory to be stored, then enter the desired time setting for calibration, and then select START.

- To specify the place where the MCACC memory is to be stored, press **MCACC** to select the MCACC memory you want to store.

Based on the reverb measurement above, you can choose the time period that will be used for the final frequency adjustment and calibration. Even though you can make this setting without reverb measurement, it is best to use the measurement results as a reference for your time setting. For an optimal system calibration based on the direct sound coming from the speakers, we recommend using the **30-50ms** setting.

Use ←/→ to select the setting. Use ↑/↓ to switch between them.

Select the setting from the following time periods (in milliseconds): **0-20ms**, **10-30ms**, **20-40ms**, **30-50ms**, **40-60ms**, **50-70ms** and **60-80ms**. This setting will be applied to all channels during calibration.

When you're finished, select **START**. It will take about 2 to 4 minutes for the calibration to finish. After the Acoustic Calibration Equalization is set, you are given the option to check the settings on-screen.

Checking MCACC Data

At the procedure of *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 , the procedure of *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 or after fine-adjusting at *Manual MCACC setup* on page 58 , you can check your calibrated settings using the GUI screen.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ↑/↓/←/→ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

2 Select 'MCACC Data Check' from the Home Menu.

3 Select the setting you want to check.

- **Speaker Setting** – Used to check the settings of the speaker systems. See *Speaker Setting* on page 60 for more on this.
- **Channel Level** – Used to check the output level of the different speakers. See *Channel Level* on page 60 for more on this.
- **Speaker Distance** – Used to check the distance to the different speakers. See *Speaker Distance* on page 60 for more on this.
- **Standing Wave** – Used to check the standing wave control filter settings. See *Standing Wave* on page 61 for more on this.
- **Acoustic Cal EQ** – Used to check the calibration values of the listening environment's frequency response. See *Acoustic Cal EQ* on page 61 for more on this.

4 Press RETURN to go back to the MCACC Data Check menu, repeating steps 2 and 3 to check other settings.

5 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **Home Menu**.

Speaker Setting

Use this to display the speaker size and number of speakers. See *Speaker Setting* on page 62 for more on this.

1 Select 'Speaker Setting' from the MCACC Data Check menu.

2 Select the channel you want to check.

Use ↑/↓ to select the channel. The corresponding channel on the layout diagram is highlighted.

Channel Level

Use this to display the level of the various channels. See *Channel Level* on page 63 for more on this.

1 Select 'Channel Level' from the MCACC Data Check menu.

2 When 'MCACC' is highlighted, use ←/→ to select the MCACC preset you want to check.

The level of the various channels set at the selected MCACC preset is displayed. '**---**' is displayed for channels that are not connected.

Speaker Distance

Use this to display the distance from the different channels to the listening position. See *Speaker Distance* on page 63 for more on this.

1 Select 'Speaker Distance' from the MCACC Data Check menu.

2 When 'MCACC' is highlighted, use ←/→ to select the MCACC preset you want to check.

The distance from the various channels set at the selected MCACC preset is displayed. '**---**' is displayed for channels that are not connected.

Standing Wave

Use this to display the standing wave related adjustment values for the various MCACC memories. See *Standing Wave* on page 58 for more on this.

1 Select 'Standing Wave' from the MCACC Data Check menu.

2 When 'Filter Channel' is highlighted, use ↑/↓ to select the channel for which you want to check standing wave control.
The standing wave related calibration value for the selected channel stored at the selected MCACC preset and its graph are displayed.

3 Press ← to highlight 'MCACC', then use ↑/↓ to select the MCACC preset you want to check.

Acoustic Cal EQ

Use this to display the calibration values for the frequency response of the various channels set in the different MCACC presets. See *Acoustic Calibration EQ Adjust* on page 59 for more on this.

1 Select 'Acoustic Cal EQ' from the MCACC Data Check menu.

2 When 'Ch' is highlighted, use ↑/↓ to select the channel.
The calibration value for the frequency response of the selected channel stored at the selected MCACC preset and its graph are displayed.

3 Press ← to highlight 'MCACC', then use ↑/↓ to select the MCACC preset you want to check.

Data Management

This system allows you to store up to six MCACC presets, allowing you to calibrate your system for different listening positions (or frequency adjustments for the same listening position). This is useful for alternate settings to match the kind of source you're listening to and where you're sitting (for example, watching movies from a sofa, or playing a video game close to the TV).
From this menu you can copy from one preset to another, name presets for easier identification and clear any ones you don't need.

- This can be done in *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 or *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 , either of which you should have already completed.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.
A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ↑/↓/←/→ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

2 Select 'Data Management' from the Home Menu.

3 Select the setting you want to adjust.

- **Memory Rename** – Name your MCACC presets for easy identification (see *Renaming MCACC presets* on page 61).
- **MCACC Memory Copy** – Copy settings from one MCACC preset to another (see *Copying MCACC preset data* on page 61).
- **MCACC Memory Clear** – Clear any MCACC presets that you don't want (see *Clearing MCACC presets* on page 61).

Renaming MCACC presets

If you have several different MCACC presets that you're using, you may want to rename them for easier identification.

1 Select 'Memory Rename' from the Data Management setup menu.

2 Select the MCACC preset you want to rename, then select an appropriate preset name.
Use ↑/↓ to select the preset, then ←/→ to select a preset name.

3 Repeat for as many MCACC presets as necessary, then press RETURN when you're finished.
You will return to the **Data Management** setup menu.

Copying MCACC preset data

If you want to manually adjust the Acoustic Calibration EQ (see *Manual MCACC setup* on page 58), we recommend copying your current settings to an unused MCACC preset. Instead of just a flat EQ curve, this will give you a reference point from which to start.

- The settings made in *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 or *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 .

1 Select 'MCACC Memory Copy' from the Data Management setup menu.

2 Select the setting you want to copy.

- **All Data** – Copies all the settings of the selected MCACC preset memory.
- **Level & Distance** – Copies only the channel level and speaker distance settings of the selected MCACC preset memory.

3 Select the MCACC preset you'll be copying the settings 'From', then specify where you want to copy them ('To').
Make sure you don't overwrite an MCACC preset you're currently using (this can't be undone).

4 Select 'OK' to confirm and copy the settings.
When **MCACC Memory Copy?** is displayed, select **YES**. If **NO** is selected, the memory is not copied.
Completed! shows in the GUI screen to confirm the MCACC preset has been copied, then you automatically return to the **Data Management** setup menu.

Clearing MCACC presets

If you are no longer using one of the MCACC presets stored in memory, you can choose to clear the calibration settings of that preset.

1 Select 'MCACC Memory Clear' from the Data Management setup menu.

2 Select the MCACC preset you want to clear.
Make sure you don't clear an MCACC preset you're currently using (this can't be undone).

3 Select 'OK' to confirm and clear the preset.
When **MCACC Memory Clear?** is displayed, select **YES**. If **NO** is selected, the memory is not cleared.
Completed! shows in the GUI screen to confirm the MCACC preset has been cleared, then you automatically return to the **Data Management** setup menu.

The System Setup and Other Setup menus

Making receiver settings from the System Setup menu

The following section describes how to change the speaker-related settings manually and make various other settings (input selection, OSD language selection, etc.).

1 Press ⏻ RECEIVER to switch on the receiver and your TV.

Make sure that the TV's video input is set to this receiver.

2 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ⬆/⬇/⬅/➡ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

- Press **HOME MENU** at any time to exit the **Home Menu**.

3 Select 'System Setup' from the Home Menu, then press ENTER.

4 Select the setting you want to adjust.

- **Manual SP Setup** – Sets the type of connection used for surround back terminals and the size, number distance and overall balance of the connected speakers (see *Manual speaker setup* on page 62).
- **Input Setup** – Specifies what you've connected to the digital, HDMI and component video inputs (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).
- **OSD Language** – The GUI screen's display language can be changed (see *Changing the OSD display language (OSD Language)* on page 23).
- **Network Setup** – Conducts the setup necessary to connect this unit to the network (see *Network Setup menu* on page 64).
- **HDMI Setup** – Synchronizes this receiver with your Pioneer component supporting **Control** with HDMI (page 41).
- **Other Setup** – Makes customized settings to reflect how you are using the receiver (see *The Other Setup menu* on page 66).

Manual speaker setup

This receiver allows you to make detailed settings to optimize the surround sound performance. You only need to make these settings once (unless you change the placement of your current speaker system or add new speakers). These settings are designed to customize your system, but if you're satisfied with the settings made in *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 , it isn't necessary to make all of these settings.

⚠ CAUTION

- The test tones used in the **Manual SP Setup** are output at high volume.

1 Select 'Manual SP Setup', then press ENTER.

See *Making receiver settings from the System Setup menu* on page 62 if you're not already at this screen.

2 Select the setting you want to adjust.

If you are doing this for the first time, you may want to adjust these settings in order:

- **Speaker System** – Specifies how you are using your surround back speaker terminals and B speaker terminals (page 62).
- **Speaker Setting** – Specifies the size and number of speakers you've connected (page 62).
- **Channel Level** – Adjusts the overall balance of your speaker system (page 63).
- **Speaker Distance** – Specifies the distance of your speakers from the listening position (page 63).
- **X-Curve** – Adjusts the tonal balance of your speaker system for movie soundtracks (page 64).

3 Make the adjustments necessary for each setting, pressing RETURN to confirm after each screen.

Speaker system setting

- Default setting: **Normal(SB/FH)**

There are several ways you can use the speaker terminals with this receiver. In addition to a normal home theater setup where they are used for the front height speakers or front wide speakers, they can be used for bi-amping the front speakers or as an independent speaker system in another room.

1 Select 'Speaker System' from the Manual SP Setup menu.

See *Making receiver settings from the System Setup menu* on page 62 if you're not already at this screen.

2 Select the speaker system setting.

- **Normal(SB/FH)** – Select for normal home theater use with front height speakers in your main (speaker system A) setup.
- **Normal(SB/FW)** – Select for normal home theater use with front wide speakers in your main (speaker system A) setup.
- **Speaker B** – Select to use the B speaker terminals to listen to stereo playback in another room (see *Switching the speaker terminals* on page 47).
- **Front Bi-Amp** – Select this setting if you're bi-amping your front speakers (see *Bi-amping your speakers* on page 13).
- **ZONE 2** – Select to use the surround back speaker terminals for an independent system in another zone (see *Using the MULTI-ZONE controls* on page 47).

3 If you selected Normal(SB/FH), Normal(SB/FW), or Speaker B in Step 2, select the placement of the surround speakers.

In a 7.1-channel surround system with surround speakers placed directly at the sides of the listening position, the surround sound of 5.1-channel sources is heard from the side. This function mixes the sound of the surround speakers with the surround back speakers so that the surround sound is heard from diagonally to the rear as it should be.

Depending on the positions of the speakers and the sound source, in some cases it may not be possible to achieve good results. In this case, set the setting to **ON SIDE** or **IN REAR**.

- **ON SIDE** – Select when the surround speakers is positioned right beside you.
- **IN REAR** – Select when the surround speaker is positioned obliquely behind you.

4 When 'Setting Change?' is displayed, select Yes.

If **No** is selected, the setting is not changed. You will return to the **Manual SP Setup** menu.

Speaker Setting

Use this setting to specify your speaker configuration (size, number of speakers and crossover frequency). It is a good idea to make sure that the settings made in *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 are correct. Note that this setting

applies to all MCACC presets, and cannot be set independently.

- If you're using a THX speaker setup, set all speakers to **SMALL**.

1 Select 'Speaker Setting' from the Manual SP Setup menu.

2 Choose the set of speakers that you want to set, then select a speaker size.

Use ⬅/➡ to select the size (and number) of each of the following speakers:

- **Front** – Select **LARGE** if your front speakers reproduce bass frequencies effectively, or if you didn't connect a subwoofer. Select **SMALL** to send the bass frequencies to the subwoofer.
- **Center** – Select **LARGE** if your center speaker reproduces bass frequencies effectively, or select **SMALL** to send bass frequencies to the other speakers or subwoofer. If you didn't connect a center speaker, choose **NO** (the center channel is sent to the front speakers).
- **FH** – Select **LARGE** if your front height speakers reproduce bass frequencies effectively, or select **SMALL** to send bass frequencies to the other speakers or subwoofer. If you didn't connect front height speakers, choose **NO** (the front height channel is sent to the front speakers).
  - — You can adjust this setting only when **Speaker System** setting is **Normal(SB/FH)**.
  - — If the surround speakers are set to **NO**, this setting will automatically be set to **NO**.
- **FW** – Select **LARGE** if your front wide speakers reproduce bass frequencies effectively, or select **SMALL** to send bass frequencies to the other speakers or subwoofer. If you didn't connect front wide speakers, choose **NO** (the front wide channel is sent to the front speakers).
  - — You can adjust this setting only when **Speaker System** setting is **Normal(SB/FW)**.
  - — If the surround speakers are set to **NO**, this setting will automatically be set to **NO**.
- **Surr** – Select **LARGE** if your surround speakers reproduce bass frequencies effectively. Select **SMALL** to send bass frequencies to the other speakers or subwoofer. If you didn't connect surround speakers choose **NO** (the sound of the surround channels is sent to the front speakers or a subwoofer).
- **SB** – Select the number of surround back speakers you have (one, two or none). Select **LARGEx2** or **LARGEx1** if your surround back speakers reproduce bass frequencies effectively. Select **SMALLx2** or **SMALLx1** to send bass frequencies to the other speakers or subwoofer. If you didn't connect surround back speakers choose **NO**.
  - — If you selected **ZONE 2** or **Front Bi-Amp** (in *Speaker system setting* on page 62) you can't adjust the surround back settings.
  - — If the surround speakers are set to **NO**, the surround back speakers will automatically be set to **NO**.
- **SW** – LFE signals and bass frequencies of channels set to **SMALL** are output from the subwoofer when **YES** is selected. Choose the **PLUS** setting if you want the subwoofer to output bass sound continuously or you want deeper bass (the bass frequencies that would normally come out the front and center speakers are also routed to the subwoofer). If you did not connect a subwoofer choose **NO** (the bass frequencies are output from other speakers).
  - — If you have a subwoofer and like lots of bass, it may seem logical to select **LARGE** for your front speakers and **PLUS** for the subwoofer. This may not, however, yield the best bass results. Depending on the speaker placement of your room you may actually experience a decrease in the amount of bass due low frequency cancellations. In this case, try changing the position or direction of speakers. If you can't get good results, listen to the bass response with it set to **PLUS** and **YES** or the front speakers set to **LARGE** and **SMALL** alternatively and let your ears judge which sounds best. If you're having problems, the easiest option is to route all the bass sounds to the subwoofer by selecting **SMALL** for the front speakers.

If you select **NO** for the subwoofer the front speakers will automatically be fixed to **LARGE**. Also, the center, surround, surround back, front height and front wide speakers can't be set to **LARGE** if the front speakers are set to **SMALL**. In this case, all bass frequencies are sent to the subwoofer.

3 Select 'X. OVER' and set the crossover frequency.

Frequencies below this point will be sent to the subwoofer (or **LARGE** speakers).

- This setting decides the cutoff between bass sounds playing back from the speakers selected as **LARGE**, or the subwoofer, and bass sounds playing back from those selected as **SMALL**. It also decides where the cutoff will be for bass sounds in the LFE channel.
- With **Full Auto MCACC** setup or **Auto MCACC** setup (**ALL** or **Speaker Setting**), the setting here will not apply and the crossover frequency will be automatically set. Crossover frequency is a frequency aimed at achieving the optimal sound field taking into account the bass capacity of all connected speakers and human aural characteristics.
- If you're using THX speakers, confirm that the crossover frequency is set to **80Hz**.

4 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **Manual SP Setup** menu.

Channel Level

Using the channel level settings, you can adjust the overall balance of your speaker system, an important factor when setting up a home theater system.

1 Select 'Channel Level' from the Manual SP Setup menu.

The test tones will start.

2 Adjust the level of each channel using ⬅/➡.

Use ⬆/⬇ to switch speakers.

Adjust the level of each speaker as the test tone is emitted.

- If you are using a Sound Pressure Level (SPL) meter, take the readings from your main listening position and adjust the level of each speaker to 75 dB SPL (C-weighting/slow reading).

3 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **Manual SP Setup** menu.

Note

- You can change the channel levels by press RECEIVER to the receiver operation mode, then press **CH LEVEL**, and then using ⬅/➡ on the remote control.
  Channel level adjustment using **CH LEVEL** and ⬅/➡ is meant as a convenient way to temporarily fine-adjust the sound being played. This adjustment is not stored in the MCACC memory's channel level setting.

Speaker Distance

For good sound depth and separation from your system, you need to specify the distance of your speakers from the listening position. The receiver can then add the proper delay needed for effective surround sound.

1 Select 'Speaker Distance' from the Manual SP Setup menu.

2 Adjust the distance of each speaker using ←/→.
You can adjust the distance of each speaker in 0.01 m Increments.

3 When you're finished, press RETURN.
You will return to the **Manual SP Setup** menu.

Note
- For best surround sound, make sure the surround back speakers are the same distance from the listening position.

X-Curve

Most soundtracks mixed for cinema sound too bright when played back in large rooms. The X-Curve setting acts as a kind of re-equalization for home theater listening, and restores proper tonal balance of movie soundtracks.

1 Select 'X-Curve' from the Manual SP Setup menu.

2 Choose the X-Curve setting you want.
Use ←/→ to adjust the setting. The X-Curve is expressed as a downwards slope in decibels per octave, starting at 2 kHz. The sound becomes less bright as the slope increases (to a maximum of **–3.0dB/oct**). Use the following guidelines to set the X-Curve according to your room size:

Room size (m²)	≤36	≤48	≤60	≤72	≤300	≤1000
X-Curve (dB/oct)	–0.5	–1.0	–1.5	–2.0	–2.5	–3.0

- If you select **OFF**, the frequency curve will be flat and the X-Curve has no effect.

3 When you're finished, press RETURN.

Network Setup menu

Setting up the network to listen to Internet radio on this receiver.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.
A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ↑/↓/←/→ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

2 Select 'System Setup' from the Home Menu.

3 Select 'Network Setup' from the System Setup menu.

4 Select the setting you want to adjust.
If you are doing this for the first time, you may want to adjust these settings in order:
- **IP Address, Proxy** – Sets up the IP address/Proxy of this receiver (page 64).
- **Network Standby** – Allows the AVNavigator or iControlAV2 function to be used even when the receiver is in the standby mode (page 65).
- **Friendly Name** – The name of the receiver displayed on a computer or other device connected to the network can be changed (page 65).
- **Parental Lock** – Restricts usage of network functions (page 65).
- **Wireless LAN Converter** – Used to make the wireless LAN converter's access point and IP address settings (page 65).
  For the wireless LAN converter, use the separately sold AS-WL300.

IP address/Proxy setting

In case the router connected to the LAN terminal on this receiver is a broadband router (with a built-in DHCP server function), simply turn on the DHCP server function, and you will not need to set up the network manually. You must set up the network as described below only when you have connected this receiver to a broadband router without a DHCP server function. Before you set up the network, consult with your ISP or the network manager for the required settings. It is advised that you also refer to the operation manual supplied with your network component.
- In case you make changes to the network configuration without the DHCP server function, make the corresponding changes to the network settings of this receiver.

IP Address

The IP address to be entered must be defined within the following ranges. If the IP address defined is beyond the following ranges, you cannot play back audio files stored on components on the network or listen to Internet radio stations.
Class A: 10.0.0.1 to 10.255.255.254
Class B: 172.16.0.1 to 172.31.255.254
Class C: 192.168.0.1 to 192.168.255.254

Subnet Mask

In case an xDSL modem or a terminal adapter is directly connected to this receiver, enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP on paper. In most cases, enter 255.255.255.0.

Default Gateway

In case a gateway (router) is connected to this receiver, enter the corresponding IP address.

Primary DNS Server/ Secondary DNS Server

In case there is only one DNS server address provided by your ISP on paper, enter it in the '**Primary DNS Server**' field. In case there are more than two DNS server addresses, enter '**Secondary DNS Server**' in the other DNS server address field.

Proxy Hostname/Proxy Port

This setting is required when you connect this receiver to the Internet via a proxy server. Enter the IP address of your proxy server in the '**Proxy Hostname**' field. Also, enter the port number of your proxy server in the '**Proxy Port**' field.

1 Select 'IP Address, Proxy' from the Network Setup menu.

2 Select the DHCP setting you want.
When you select **ON**, the network is automatically set up, and you do not need to follow Steps 3. Proceed with Step 4.
If there is no DHCP server on the network and you select **ON**, this receiver will use its own Auto IP function to determine the IP address.
- The IP address determined by the Auto IP function is 169.254.X.X. You cannot listen to an Internet radio station if the IP address is set for the Auto IP function.

3 Enter the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway, Primary DNS Server and Secondary DNS Server.
Press ↑/↓ to select a number and ←/→ to move the cursor.

4 Select 'OFF' or 'ON' for the Enable Proxy Server setting to deactivate or activate the proxy server.
In case you select '**OFF**', proceed with Step 7. In case you select '**ON**', on the other hand, proceed with Step 5.

5 Enter the address of your proxy server or the domain name.
Use ↑/↓ to select a character, ←/→ to set the position, and **ENTER** to confirm your selection.

6 Enter the port number of your proxy server.
Use ↑/↓ to select a character, ←/→ to set the position, and **ENTER** to confirm your selection.

7 Select 'OK' to confirm the IP Address/ Proxy setup.

Network Standby

This setting allows the AVNavigator or iControlAV2 function for operating the receiver from a computer connected on the same LAN as the receiver to be used even when the receiver is in the standby mode.

1 Select 'Network Standby' from the Network Setup menu.

2 Specify whether the Network Standby is ON or OFF.

- **ON** – The AVNavigator or iControlAV2 function can be used even when the receiver is in the standby mode.
- **OFF** – The AVNavigator or iControlAV2 function cannot be used when the receiver is in the standby mode (This lets you reduce power consumption in the standby mode).

Friendly Name

1 Select 'Friendly Name' from the Network Setup menu.

2 Select 'Edit Name' then select 'Rename'.

If after changing the name you want to restore the name to the default, select **Default**.

3 Input the name you want.

Use ⬆/⬇ to select a character, ⬅/➡ to set the position, and **ENTER** to confirm your selection.

Parental Lock

Set restrictions for using Internet services. Also set the password accompanying the usage restrictions.

Important

When the **HOME MEDIA GALLERY** input is selected, the setting made here cannot be reflected. Set the input to something other than **HOME MEDIA GALLERY** before making this setting.

1 Select 'Parental Lock' from the Network Setup menu.

2 Input the password.

Use ⬆/⬇ to select a character, ⬅/➡ to set the position, and **ENTER** to confirm your selection.

3 Specify whether to turn Parental Lock on or off.

- **OFF** – Internet services are not restricted.
- **ON** – Internet services are restricted.

4 If you want to change the password, select Change Password.

In this case, the procedure returns to step 2.

Wireless LAN Converter

This setting is required for connecting a wireless LAN converter to the receiver and using wireless network functions.
For the wireless LAN converter, use the separately sold AS-WL300.

Access Point Setting

Make the connection settings for the wireless LAN converter connected to the receiver and the access point. Connect the wireless LAN converter to the receiver and set DHCP on the "**IP Address, Proxy**" settings menu beforehand (page 64). There are four way to make the settings for connecting to the access point, as shown below.

- **WPS (PBC)** – Connection settings are made automatically simply by pressing the WPS buttons on the access point and wireless LAN converter, following the instructions displayed on the receiver's screen. This is the simplest way of making the settings, and is possible when the access point and wireless LAN converter are equipped with WPS buttons. Network connection settings require approximately 2 minutes from the time the WPS buttons are pressed. Wait until the settings are completed.
- **WPS (PIN)** – Display a list of the SSIDs of connectable access points and select the access point to which you want to connect from this list. Connection settings are made by inputting the 8-digit PIN code displayed on the receiver's screen to the access point to which you want to connect.
- **Search for Access Point** – Display a list of the SSIDs of connectable access points and select the access point to which you want to connect from this list. Connection settings with the access point are made by setting the access point's security protocol, security key and WEP default key (only when the access point's security protocol is WEP).
- **Manual Setting** – Connection settings are made by manually inputting the SSID, security protocol, security key and WEP default key of the access point to which you want to connect.

Note

- If there is a "; " (semicolon) in the access point's SSID or security key, wireless LAN connection will not be possible even after the wireless LAN converter settings are completed. Change the setting of the access point's SSID or security key to a character string that does not include a "; " (semicolon).

WLAN IP Address

If the IP address of a device connected in the LAN other than the wireless LAN converter is set to "192.168.XXX.249", the IP address of the wireless LAN converter will be redundant, making connection to the access point impossible. In this case, use this setting to set an IP address specific to the wireless LAN converter.

1 Select 'Wireless LAN Converter' from the Network Setup menu.

2 Make the wireless LAN converter settings as necessary.

When making the connection settings of the wireless LAN converter and access point, select "**Access Point Setting**" and make the connection settings for the wireless LAN converter and access point following the instructions on the screen.
If you want to set the wireless LAN converter's IP address, select "**WLAN IP Address**" and input the IP address.

Checking the Network Information

The setting status of the following network-related items can be checked.

- **IP Address** – Check the IP address of this receiver.
- **MAC Address** – Check the MAC address of this receiver.
- **Friendly Name** – *Friendly Name* on page 65 .
- **SSID** – Check the SSID of the access point connected with the wireless LAN converter (only when a wireless LAN converter is connected).

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ⬆/⬇/⬅/➡ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

2 Select 'Network Information' from the Home Menu.

Display the setting status of the network-related items.

The Other Setup menu

The **Other Setup** menu is where you can make customized settings to reflect how you are using the receiver.

1 Press RECEIVER on the remote control, then press HOME MENU.

A Graphical User Interface (GUI) screen appears on your TV. Use ↑/↓/←/→ and **ENTER** to navigate through the screens and select menu items. Press **RETURN** to exit the current menu.

2 Select 'System Setup' from the Home Menu.

3 Select 'Other Setup', then press ENTER.

4 Select the setting you want to adjust.

If you are doing this for the first time, you may want to adjust these settings in order:

- **Auto Power Down** – Sets the power to turn off automatically when the receiver is not being used.
- **Volume Setup** – Sets up the volume-related operations of this receiver (page 66).
- **Remote Control Mode Setup** – Sets this receiver's remote control mode (page 66).
- **Flicker Reduction Setup** – Adjusts the way the GUI screen looks (page 66).
- **Software Update** – Use to update the receiver's software and check the version.
- **Pairing Bluetooth Setup** – Use to pair a *Bluetooth* ADAPTER and *Bluetooth* wireless technology device (page 31).

5 Make the adjustments necessary for each setting, pressing RETURN to confirm after each screen.

Auto Power Down

The power can be set to turn off automatically if no operation has been performed for a specific amount of time with no audio or video signals being input to the receiver. When using ZONE 2, the ZONE 2 power can also be set to turn off, but for ZONE 2 the power turns off automatically after the amount of time set here even if signals are being input or operations have been performed.

Different times can be set for the main zone and ZONE 2.

1 Select 'Auto Power Down' from the Other Setup menu.

2 Select the zone you want to set and set the time after which the power turns off.

- **MAIN** – The time can be selected from among "**15 min**", "**30 min**", "**60 min**" and "**OFF**". The power turns off after there has been no signal and no operation for the selected time.
- **ZONE 2** – The time can be selected from among "**30 min**", "**1 hour**", "**3 hours**", "**6 hours**", "**9 hours**" and "**OFF**". The power turns off after the selected time.

Volume Setup

You can set the maximum volume of this receiver or specify what the volume level will be when the power is turned on.

1 Select 'Volume Setup' from the Other Setup menu.

2 Select the Power ON Level setting you want.

The volume can be set so that it is always set to the same level when the receiver's power is turned on.

- **LAST** (default) – When the power is turned on, the volume is set to the same level as when the power was last turned off.
- "**---**" – When the power is turned on, the volume is set to minimum level.
- **–80.0dB** to **+12.0dB** – Specify the volume to be set when the power is turned on, in steps of 0.5 dB.

It is not possible to set a volume level greater than the value specified at Volume Limit setup (see below).

3 Select the Volume Limit setting you want.

Use this function to limit the maximum volume. The volume cannot be increased above the level set here, even by operating **MASTER VOLUME** button (or the dial on the front panel).

- **OFF** (default) – The maximum volume is not limited.
- **–20.0dB**/**–10.0dB**/**0.0dB** – The maximum volume is limited to the value set here.

4 Select the Mute Level setting you want.

This sets how much the volume is to be turned down when **MUTE** is pressed.

- **FULL** (default) – No sound.
- **–40.0dB**/**–20.0dB** – The volume will be turned down to the level specified here.

5 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **Other Setup** menu.

Remote Control Mode Setup

- Default setting: **1**

This sets this receiver's remote control mode to prevent erroneous operation when multiple units of the receiver are being used.

1 Select 'Remote Control Mode Setup' from the Other Setup menu.

2 Select the Remote Control Mode setting you want.

3 Select 'OK' to change the remote control mode.

4 Follow the instructions on the screen to change the remote control's setting.

See *Operating multiple receivers* on page 50 .

5 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **Other Setup** menu.

Flicker Reduction Setup

- Default setting: **OFF**

The GUI screen's resolution can be increased. If you feel the GUI screen is hard to see, try changing this setting. Note that the resolution in this setting only affects the GUI screen; it has no influence on the video output.

1 Select 'Flicker Reduction Setup' from the Other Setup menu.

2 Select the Flicker Reduction setting you want.

3 When you're finished, press RETURN.

You will return to the **Other Setup** menu.

Software Update

Use this procedure to update the receiver's software and check the version. There are two ways to update: via the Internet and via a USB memory device.

Updating via the Internet is performed by accessing the file server from the receiver and downloading the file. This procedure is only possible if the receiver is connected to the Internet.

Updating via a USB memory device is performed by downloading the update file from a computer, reading this file onto a USB memory device then inserting this USB memory device into the USB port on the receiver's front panel. With this procedure, the USB memory device containing the update file must first be inserted into the USB port on the receiver's front panel.

- If an update file is provided on the Pioneer website, download it onto your computer. When downloading an update file from the Pioneer website onto your computer, the file will be in ZIP format. Unzip the ZIP file before saving it on the USB memory device. If there are any old downloaded files or downloaded files for other models on the USB memory device, delete them.

Important

- DO NOT unplug the power cord during updating.
- When updating via the Internet, do not disconnect the LAN cable. When updating via a USB memory device, do not disconnect the USB memory device.

1 Select 'Software Update' from the Other Setup menu.

2 Select the update procedure.

- **Update via Internet** – The receiver checks whether updatable software is available via the Internet.
- **Update via USB Memory** – The receiver checks whether the USB memory device inserted into the USB port on the receiver's front panel contains updatable software. "**Accessing**" is displayed and the update file is checked. Wait a while.

3 Check on the screen whether or not an update file was found.

If "**New version found.**" is displayed, the update file has been found. The version number and updating time are displayed.

If "**This is the latest version. There is no need to update.**" is displayed, no update file has been found.

4 To update, select OK.

The updating screen appears and updating is performed.

- The power turns off automatically once updating is completed.

Software Update messages

Status messages	Descriptions
NO UPDATE FILE	No update file was found on the USB memory device. Store the file in the USB memory device's root directory.
FILE ERROR	Try disconnecting then reconnecting the USB device or storing the update file again. If the error still occurs, try using a different USB memory device.
UPDATE ERROR 1 to **UPDATE ERROR 7**	Turn the receiver's power off, then turn it back on and try updating the software again.
Update via USB	If this message flashes, updating has failed. Update via a USB memory device. Put the update file on a USB memory device and connect the device to the USB port. When the file is found, software updating starts automatically.
UE11	Updating has failed. Use the same procedure to update the software again.
UE22	
UE33	

Additional information

Troubleshooting 1

Incorrect operations are often mistaken for trouble and malfunctions. If you think that there is something wrong with this component, check the points below. Sometimes the trouble may lie in another component. Investigate the other components and electrical appliances being used. If the trouble cannot be rectified even after exercising the checks listed below, ask your nearest Pioneer authorized independent service company to carry out repair work.

- If the unit does not operate normally due to external effects such as static electricity disconnect the power plug from the outlet and insert again to return to normal operating conditions.

Power

Symptom	Remedy
The power does not turn on.	Make sure that the power cord is plugged in to an active power outlet.
	Try disconnecting from the power outlet, then plugging back in.
Power cannot be turned off. (**ZONE 2 ON** is displayed.)	Press the remote control's **ZONE 2**, then press ⏻ **RECEIVER** to switch the Zone 2 off.
The receiver suddenly switches off or the **iPod iPhone iPad** indicator blinks.	Check that there are no loose strands of speaker wire touching the rear panel or another set of wires. If so, re-attach the speaker wires, making sure there are no stray strands.
	The receiver may have a serious problem. Disconnect from the power and call a Pioneer authorized independent service company.
During loud playback the power suddenly switches off.	Turn down the volume.
	Lower the 63 Hz and 125 Hz equalizer levels in the *Manual MCACC setup* on page 58 .
	Switch on the digital safety feature. While holding down **ENTER** on the front panel, press ⏻ **STANDBY/ON** to set this receiver to the standby mode. Use **TUNE** ⬆/⬇ to select **D.SAFETY ◄OFF►**, and then use **PRESET** ⬅/➡ to select **1** or **2** (select **D.SAFETY ◄OFF►** to deactivate this feature). If the power switches off even with **2** switched on, turn down the volume. With **1** or **2** on, some features may be unavailable.
The unit does not respond when the buttons are pressed.	Try switching the receiver off, then back on again.
	Try disconnecting the power cord, then connect again.
AMP ERR blinks in the display, then the power automatically switches off. The **ADVANCED MCACC** blinks and the power does not turn on.	The receiver may have a serious problem. Do not try switching the receiver on. Unplug the receiver from the wall and call a Pioneer authorized independent service company.
The receiver suddenly switches off or the **FL OFF** indicator blinks.	There is a problem with the receiver's power unit or fan. Try turning on the power. If the same thing happens, the receiver is damaged. Unplug the receiver from the wall and call a Pioneer authorized independent service company. (Other symptoms may appear when the power is turned on.)
OVERHEAT blinks in the display or **AMP OVERHEAT** and the **FL OFF** indicator flash and the power turns off.	Allow the unit to cool down in a well-ventilated place before switching back on (see *Installing the receiver* on page 5).
	Wait at least 1 minute, then try turning the power on again.
	The temperature within the unit has exceeded the allowablevalue.
	Lower the volume level.
The receiver suddenly power off or **ADVANCED MCACC** flashes.	The power unit is damaged. Unplug the receiver from the wall and call a Pioneer authorized independent service company.

No sound

Symptom	Remedy
No sound is output when an input function is selected. No sound is output from the front speakers.	Check the volume, mute setting (press **MUTE**) and speaker setting (press **SPEAKERS**).
	Make sure the correct input function is selected.
	Check that the MCACC setup microphone is disconnected.
	Make sure the correct input signal is selected (press **SIGNAL SEL**).
	Note that when **Fixed PCM ON** is selected, you won't be able to hear any other signal format (see *Setting the Audio options* on page 44).
	Check that the source component is connected properly (see *Connecting your equipment* on page 10).
	Check that the speakers are connected properly (see *Connecting the speakers* on page 12).
No sound from the surround or center speakers.	Check that the Stereo listening mode or the Front Stage Surround Advance mode isn't selected; select one of the surround listening modes (see *Listening in surround sound* on page 33).
	Check that the surround/center speakers are not set to **NO** (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
	Check the channel level settings (see *Channel Level* on page 63).
	Check the speaker connections (see *Connecting the speakers* on page 12).

Symptom	Remedy
No sound from surround back speakers.	Check that the surround back speakers are set to **LARGE** or **SMALL**, and the surround speakers are not set to **NO** (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
	Check the speaker connections (see *Connecting the speakers* on page 12). If only one surround back speaker is connected, make sure it's connected to the left channel speaker terminal.
	Surround back speakers will not play while the **Speaker System** is set to **Speaker B** and audio is being played through speaker B.
	When **Speaker System** is set to **Normal(SB/FH)** or **Normal(SB/FW)** and **SP: FH ON** or **SP: FW ON** is selected with the **SPEAKERS** button, no sound will be output from the surround back speakers. Select **SP: SB/FH ON**, **SP: SB/FW ON** or **SP: SB ON** (see *Switching the speaker terminals* on page 47).
No sound from front height or front wide speakers.	Check that the front height or front wide speakers are set to **LARGE** or **SMALL**, and the surround speakers are not set to **NO** (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
	When **Speaker System** is set to **Normal(SB/FH)** or **Normal(SB/FW)** and **SP: SB ON** is selected with the **SPEAKERS** button, no sound will be output from the front height or front wide speakers. Select **SP: SB/FH ON**, **SP: SB/FW ON**, **SP: FH ON** or **SP: FW ON** (see *Switching the speaker terminals* on page 47).
	Check the speaker connections (see *Connecting the speakers* on page 12).
No sound from subwoofer.	Check that the subwoofer is connected properly, switched on and the volume turned up.
	If your subwoofer has a sleep function, make sure it is switched off.
	Make sure that the Subwoofer setting is **YES** or **PLUS** (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
	The crossover frequency may be set too low; try setting it higher to match the characteristics of your other speakers (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
	If there is very little low frequency information in the source material, change your speaker settings to Front: **SMALL** / Subwoofer: **YES**, or Front: **LARGE** / Subwoofer: **PLUS** (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
	Check that the **LFE** channel is not set to **OFF**, or to a very quiet setting (see *Setting the Audio options* on page 44).
	Check the speaker level settings (see *Channel Level* on page 63).

Symptom	Remedy
No sound from one speaker.	Check the speaker connection (see *Connecting the speakers* on page 12).
	Check the speaker level settings (see *Channel Level* on page 63).
	Check that the speaker hasn't been set to **NO** (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
	The channel may not be recorded in the source. By using one of the advanced effect listening modes, you may be able to create the missing channel (see *Listening in surround sound* on page 33).
Sound is produced from analog components, but not from digital ones (DVD, LD, CD, etc.).	Check that the input signal type is set to **DIGITAL** (see *Choosing the input signal* on page 34).
	Make sure that the digital input is assigned correctly for the input jack the component is connected to (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).
	Check the digital output settings on the source component.
	If the source component has a digital volume control, make sure this is not turned down.
No sound is output or a noise is output when Dolby Digital/DTS software is played back.	Check that your BD or DVD player is compatible with Dolby Digital/DTS discs.
	Check the digital output settings or the HDMI audio output settings of your BD or DVD player. Make sure that the DTS signal output is set to On.
	If the source component has a digital volume control, make sure this is not turned down.
No sound when using the **Home Menu**.	If the HDMI input function is selected, sound is muted until exiting the **Home Menu**.

Other audio problems

Symptom	Remedy
Speaker switching sound (clicking sound) is heard from receiver during playback.	Depending on the listening mode, the front height (or front wide) and surround back speakers may switch automatically in function of changes in the input audio. A speaker switching sound (clicking sound) will be heard from the receiver at this time. If this sound bothers you, we recommend to change the speaker terminal option (see *Switching the speaker terminals* on page 47).
Broadcast stations cannot be selected automatically, or there is considerable noise in radio broadcasts.	Fully extend the FM wire antenna, adjust the position for best reception and secure to a wall, etc.
	Use an outdoor antenna for better reception (see page 19).
	Adjust the position and direction of the AM antenna.
	Noise may be caused by interference from other equipment, such as a fluorescent light, motor, etc. Switch off or move the other equipment, or move the AM antenna.

Symptom	Remedy
Noise is output when scanning a DTS CD.	This is not a malfunction of the receiver. The scan function of your player alters the digital information, making it unreadable, resulting in noise being output. Lower the volume when scanning.
When playing a DTS format LD there is audible noise on the soundtrack.	Make sure that the input signal type is set to **DIGITAL** (see *Choosing the input signal* on page 34).
Can't record audio.	You can only make a digital recording from a digital source, and an analog recording from an analog source.
	For digital sources, make sure that what you're recording isn't copy protected.
Subwoofer output is very low.	To route more signal to the subwoofer, set it to **PLUS** or set the front speakers to **SMALL** (see *Speaker Setting* on page 62).
Everything seems to be set up correctly, but the playback sound is odd.	The speakers may be out of phase. Check that the positive/negative speaker terminals on the receiver are matched with the corresponding terminals on the speakers (see *Connecting the speakers* on page 12).
The Phase Control feature doesn't seem to have an audible effect.	If applicable, check that the lowpass filter switch on your subwoofer is off, or the lowpass cutoff is set to the highest frequency setting. If there is a PHASE setting on your subwoofer, set it to 0º (or depending on the subwoofer, the setting where you think it has the best overall effect on the sound).
	Make sure the speaker distance setting is correct for all speakers (see *Speaker Distance* on page 63).
Noise or hum can be heard even when there is no sound being input.	Check that personal computers or other digital components connected to the same power source are not causing interference.
Can't select some Input functions by the **INPUT SELECTOR** on the front panel or the **INPUT SELECT** button on the remote control.	Check the **Input Skip** settings in the **Input Setup** menu (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).
	Check the **HDMI Input** assignment in the **Input Setup** menu then try **OFF** (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).
There seems to be a time lag between the speakers and the output of the subwoofer.	See *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 to set up your system again using MCACC (this will automatically compensate for a delay in the subwoofer output).
The maximum volume available (shown in the front panel display) is lower than the **+12dB** maximum.	Check that the **Volume Limit** is set to **OFF** (see *Volume Setup* on page 66).
	The channel level setting may be over **0.0dB**.
The volume level drops automatically.	The temperature within the unit has exceeded the allowable value. Try moving the unit for better ventilation (see *Installing the receiver* on page 5).

ADAPTER PORT terminal

Symptom	Remedy
The *Bluetooth* wireless technology device cannot be connected or operated. Sound from the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device is not emitted or the sound is interrupted.	Check that no object that emits electromagnetic waves in the 2.4 GHz band (microwave oven, wireless LAN device or *Bluetooth* wireless technology apparatus) is near the unit. If such an object is near the unit, set the unit far from it. Or, stop using the object emitting the electromagnetic waves.
	Check that the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device is not too far from the unit and that obstructions are not set between the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device and the unit. Set the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device and the unit so that the distance between them is less than about 10 m and no obstructions exist between them.
	Check that the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER and the **ADAPTER PORT** of the unit are correctly connected.
	The *Bluetooth* wireless technology device may not be set to the communication mode supporting the *Bluetooth* wireless technology. Check the setting of the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.
	Check that pairing is correct. The pairing setting was deleted from this unit or the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device. Reset the pairing.
	Check that the profile is correct. Use a *Bluetooth* wireless technology device that supports A2DP profile and AVRCP profile.

Video

Symptom	Remedy
No image is output when an input is selected.	Check the video connections of the source component.
	For HDMI, or when digital video conversion is set to **OFF** and a TV and another component are connected with different cords (in *Setting the Video options* on page 46), you must connect your TV to this receiver using the same type of video cable as you used to connect your video component.
	Make sure the input assignment is correct for components connected using component video or HDMI cables (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).
	Check the video output settings of the source component.
	Check that the video input you selected on your TV is correct.
	Some components (such as video game units) have resolutions that may not be converted. If adjusting this receiver's Resolution setting (in *Setting the Video options* on page 46) and/or the resolution settings on your component or display doesn't work, try switching Digital Video Conversion (in *Setting the Video options* on page 46) to **OFF**.

Symptom	Remedy
Can't record video.	Check that the source is not copy-protected.
	The video converter is not available when making recordings. Check that the same type of video cable is used for connecting both the recorder and the video source (the one you want to record) to this receiver.
Noisy, intermittent, or distorted picture.	Sometimes a video deck may output a noisy video signal (during scanning, for example), or the video quality may just be poor (with some video game units, for example). The picture quality may also depend on the settings, etc. of your display device. Switch off the video converter and reconnect the source and display device using the same type of connection (component or composite), then start playback again.
Video signals are not output from the component terminal.	When a monitor only compatible with resolutions of 480i is connected to the component terminal and another monitor is connected to the HDMI terminal, the video signals may not be output to the monitor connected to the component terminal. If this happens, do the following: — Turn off the power of the monitor connected to the HDMI terminal. — Change the **VIDEO PARAMETER** menu **RES** setting (see *Setting the Video options* on page 46). — Video signals from the HDMI terminal cannot be output to the component terminals. Input the video signals from the player or other source to the composite or component terminals. When using the component terminal, assign it at **Input Setup** (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).

Settings

Symptom	Remedy
The Auto MCACC Setup continually shows an error.	The ambient noise level may be too high. Keep the noise level in the room as low as possible (see also *Problems when using the Auto MCACC Setup* on page 24). If the noise level cannot be kept low enough, you will have to set up the surround sound manually (page 62).
	When using only one surround back speaker, connect it to the **SURROUND BACK L (Single)** terminals.
	To use a 5.1-channel speaker set, use the surround speakers for the surround channel, not the surround back channel.
	Make sure there are no obstacles between the speakers and the microphone.
	If **Reverse Phase** is displayed, try the following: — The speaker's wiring (+ and –) may be inverted. Check the speaker connections. — Depending on the type of speakers and their installation conditions, **Reverse Phase** may be displayed even if the speakers are properly connected. If this happens, select **GO NEXT** and continue. — If the speaker is not pointed to the microphone (listening position) or when using speakers that affect the phase (dipole speakers, reflective speakers, etc.), it may not be possible to properly identify the polarity.
After using the Auto MCACC Setup, the speaker size setting is incorrect.	There may have been some low frequency noise in the room from an air-conditioner, motor, etc. Switch off all other appliances in the room and use Auto MCACC Setup again.
	Depending on a number of factors (bass reproduction capabilities of the speakers, room size, speaker placement, etc.) this may occur in some cases. Change the speaker setting manually in *Speaker Setting* on page 62 , and use the **ALL (Keep SP System)** option for the **Auto MCACC** menu in *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 if this is a recurring problem.
Can't adjust the Fine Speaker Distance setting properly.	Check that the speakers are all in phase (make sure the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals are matched up properly).
The display shows **KEY LOCK ON** when you try to make settings.	With the receiver in standby, press ⏻ **STANDBY/ON** for about 10 seconds while holding down **SPEAKERS** to disable the key lock.
Most recent settings have been erased.	The power cord was disconnected from the wall while adjusting this setting.
	Settings are only stored if all the zones are turned off. Turn off all the zones before unplugging the power cord.
The various system settings are not stored.	Do not pull out the power cord while conducting the settings. (The settings will be stored when both the main zone and sub zone turn off. Turn off all zones before pulling out the power cord.)

Professional Calibration EQ graphical output

Symptom	Remedy
The reverb characteristics graph after EQ calibration does not appear entirely flat.	There are cases where the graph does not appear flat (even when selecting **ALL CH ADJ** in the Auto MCACC Setup) due to adjustments made to compensate for room characteristics to achieve optimal sound.
	Areas of the graph may appear identical (before and after) when there is little or no adjustment needed.
	The graph may appear to have shifted vertically when comparing before and after measurements.
EQ adjustments made using the Manual MCACC setup do not appear to change the reverb characteristics graph after EQ calibration.	Despite level adjustments being made, the filters used for analysis may not display these adjustments in the reverb characteristics graph after EQ calibration. However, these adjustments are taken into account by the filters dedicated to overall system calibration.
Lower frequency response curves do not seem to have been calibrated for **SMALL** speakers.	Low frequencies used in bass management (the subwoofer channel) will not change for speakers that have been specified as **SMALL** in the configuration, or do not output these frequencies.
	Calibration is performed, but due to your speakers' low frequency limitations, no measurable sound is output for display.

Display

Symptom	Remedy
The display is dark or off.	Press **DIMMER** repeatedly to select a different brightness.
You can't get **DIGITAL** to display when using **SIGNAL SEL**.	Check the digital connections and make sure that the digital inputs are assigned correctly (see *The Input Setup menu* on page 24).
DIGITAL or **DTS** does not light when playing Dolby/DTS software.	These indicators do not light if playback is paused.
	Check the playback (especially the digital output) settings of the source component.
When playing Dolby Digital or DTS sources, the receiver's format indicators do not light.	Check that the player is connected using a digital connection.
	Make sure that the receiver is set to **AUTO** or **DIGITAL** (see *Choosing the input signal* on page 34).
	Check that the player isn't set up so that Dolby Digital and DTS sources are converted to PCM.
	Ensure that if there are several audio tracks on the disc, the Dolby Digital or DTS is selected.
When playing certain discs, none of the receiver's format indicators light.	The disc may not contain 5.1/6.1 channel material. Check the disc packaging for more on what audio tracks are recorded on the disc.
When playing a disc with the listening mode set to Auto Surround or ALC, **Pro Logic II** or **DTS Neo:6** appear on the receiver.	Make sure that the receiver is set to **AUTO** or **DIGITAL** (see *Choosing the input signal* on page 34).
	If a two channel soundtrack is currently playing (including Dolby Surround encoded), then this is not a malfunction. Check the disc packaging for details about the audio tracks available.
During playback of DVD-Audio, the display shows **PCM**.	This will occur when playing DVD-Audio material over the HDMI connection. This is not a malfunction.
The power turns off automatically and some indicator flashes, or some indicator flashes and the power does not turn on.	See the **Power** section (page 68).

Remote control

Symptom	Remedy
Cannot be remote controlled.	Set the remote control unit's remote control mode so that it matches the setting on the main unit (see *Operating multiple receivers* on page 50).
	Check whether the receiver's remote control mode is properly set (see *Remote Control Mode Setup* on page 66).
	Try replacing the batteries in the remote control (see *Loading the batteries* on page 5).
	Be sure to operate within 7 m and a 30° angle of the remote sensor on the front panel (see *Operating range of remote control unit* on page 5).
	Check that there are no obstacles between the receiver and the remote control.
	Make sure that there is no fluorescent or other strong light shining on to the remote sensor.
	Check the connections of the **CONTROL IN** jacks (see *Operating other Pioneer components with this unit's sensor* on page 22).
Other components can't be operated with the system remote.	If the battery ran down, the preset codes may have been cleared. Re-enter the preset codes.
	The preset code may be incorrect. Redo the procedure for entering preset codes.
	When commands from the remote control units of other devices are registered using the learning function, in some cases they may not be learned properly. In this case, register the commands again using the learning function (see page 51). If they still do not work, they may be in a special format that cannot be registered on this receiver's remote control. Operate the device using another remote control.

HDMI

Symptom	Remedy
The **HDMI** indicator blinks continuously.	Check all the points below.
No picture or sound.	This receiver is HDCP-compatible. Check that the components you are connecting are also HDCP-compatible. If they are not, please connect them using the component or composite video jacks.
	Depending on the connected source component, it's possible that it will not work with this receiver (even if it is HDCP-compatible). In this case, connect using the component or composite video jacks between source and receiver.
	If the problem still persists when connecting your HDMI component directly to your monitor, please consult the component or monitor manual or contact the manufacturer for support.
	If video images do not appear on your TV, try adjusting the resolution, Deep Color or other setting for your component.
	While analog video signals are being output over HDMI, use a separate connection for audio output.
	To output signals in Deep Color, use an HDMI cable (High Speed HDMI® Cable) to connect this receiver to a component or TV with the Deep Color feature.
No picture.	Try changing the Resolution setting (in *Setting the Video options* on page 46).
No sound, or sound suddenly ceases.	Check that the HDMI Audio setting is set to **AMP** (*Setting the Audio options* on page 44).
	If the component is a DVI device, use a separate connection for the audio.
	If analog video is being output over HDMI, please use a separate connection for the audio.
	Check the audio output settings of the source component.
	HDMI format digital audio transmissions require a longer time to be recognized. Due to this, interruption in the audio may occur when switching between audio formats or beginning playback.
	Turning on/off the device connected to this unit's **HDMI OUT** terminal during playback, or disconnecting/connecting the HDMI cable during playback, may cause noise or interrupted audio.
Noisy or distorted picture.	Sometimes a video deck may output a noisy video signal (during scanning, for example), or the video quality may just be poor (with some video game units, for example). The picture quality may also depend on the settings, etc. of your display device. Switch off the video converter and reconnect the source and display device using the same type of connection (component or composite), then start playback again.
	If the problem still persists when connecting your HDMI component directly to your monitor, please consult the component or monitor manual or contact the manufacturer for support.
HDCP ERROR shows in the display.	Check whether or not the connected component is compatible with HDCP. If it is not compatible with HDCP, reconnect the source device using a different type of connection (component or composite). Some components that are compatible with HDCP still cause this message to be displayed, but so long as there is no problem with displaying video, this is not a malfunction.
Synchronized operation not possible using **Control** with HDMI function.	Check the HDMI connections.
	The cable may be damaged.
	Select **ON** for the **Control** with HDMI setting (see *HDMI Setup* on page 41).
	Select **ALL** for the **Control Mode** with HDMI setting (see *HDMI Setup* on page 41).
	Turn the TV's power on before turning on this receiver's power.
	Set the TV side Control with HDMI setting to on (see TV's operating instructions).

Troubleshooting 2

AVNavigator

Symptom	Causes	Remedy
AVNavigator cannot be installed.	An error message may appear if there are not enough system resources available.	Re-start the PC, then start the installer (AVNV_XXX_xxx.exe) with no other applications active.
	Installation of AVNavigator may fail because of incompatibilities with other applications.	Try the following, in the order indicated. 1. If there are any other applications active, exit the other applications and try starting the installer (AVNV_XXX_xxx.exe) again. 2. If that does not work, try restarting your PC, and starting the installer (AVNV_XXX_xxx.exe) with no other applications active.
Software updating does not operate well.	There may be a problem with your Internet Service Provider's network.	Contact your contracted provider.
AVNavigator does not interact well with the receiver.	The receiver's power is not turned on.	Turn the receiver's power on. (Wait about 60 seconds after the power turns on for network functions to start.)
	The receiver or computer is not connected to the LAN.	Connect a LAN cable to the receiver or computer (page 20).
	The router's power is off.	Turn the router's power on.
	AVNavigator's network settings are not correct.	If your router does not support DHCP, the receiver's IP address must be set in AVNavigator. First set the IP address on the receiver, then set the same address in AVNavigator (page 64).
	Network connections could be restricted due to the computer's network settings, security settings, etc.	Check the computer's network settings, security settings, etc.
When the **Wiring Navi**, **Interactive Manual**, **Glossary** or **Software Update** is launched, a warning about security protection appears on the browser.	This is because of the browser's security function.	This is not a problem. Perform the operation to authorize the blocked contents.

USB interface

Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
The folders/files stored on a USB memory device are not displayed.	The folders/files are currently stored in a region other than the FAT (File Allocation Table) region.	Store the folders/files in the FAT region.
	The number of levels in a folder is more than 8.	Limit the maximum number of levels in a folder to 8 (page 28).
	There are more than 30 000 folders/files stored in a USB memory device.	Limit the maximum number of folders/files stored in a USB memory device to 30 000 (page 28).
	The audio files are copyrighted.	Copyrighted audio files stored on a USB memory device cannot be played back (page 28).
A USB memory device is not recognized.	The USB memory device does not support the mass storage class specifications.	Try using a USB memory device compatible with the mass storage class specifications. Note that there are cases where even the audio files stored on a USB memory device compatible with the mass storage class specifications are not played back on this receiver (page 28).
		Connect the USB memory device and switch on this receiver (page 21).
	A USB hub is currently being used.	This receiver does not support USB hubs (page 28).
	This receiver recognizes the USB memory device as a fraud.	Switch off and on again this receiver.
A USB memory device is connected and displayed, but the audio files stored on the USB memory device cannot be played back.	Some formats of USB memory devices, including FAT 12, NTFS, and HFS, cannot be played back on this receiver.	Check whether the format of your USB memory device is either FAT 16 or FAT 32. Note that the FAT 12, NTFS, and HFS formats cannot be played back on this receiver (page 28).
	The file format cannot be properly played back on this receiver.	See the list of file formats that can be played back on this receiver (page 29).

Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
Cannot detect USB keyboard.	The USB keyboard is routed through a USB hub.	This receiver is not compatible with USB hubs. Plug the keyboard directly into the receiver.
	A PS2 keyboard is routed through a PS2/USB connector.	PS2 keyboards cannot be used with this receiver, even if routed through a PS2/USB connector. Use a USB keyboard.
	Keyboard is not a USB HID Class device.	Some devices will not be detected. Use a USB HID Class keyboard.
Cannot enter correct text using the USB keyboard.	Keyboard is not US-international layout keyboard.	Use a US-international layout keyboard. NB: Some characters cannot be entered.

HOME MEDIA GALLERY

Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
Cannot access the network.	The LAN cable is not firmly connected.	Firmly connect the LAN cable (page 20).
	The router is not switched on.	Switch on the router.
	Internet security software is currently installed in the connected component.	There are cases where a component with Internet security software installed cannot be accessed.
	The audio component on the network which has been switched off is switched on.	Switch on the audio component on the network before switching on this receiver.
Playback does not start while "**Connecting...**" continues to be displayed.	The component is currently disconnected from this receiver or the power supply.	Check whether the component is properly connected to this receiver or the power supply.
The PC or Internet radio is not properly operated.	The corresponding IP address is not properly set.	Switch on the built-in DHCP server function of your router, or set up the network manually according to your network environment (page 64).
	The IP address is being automatically configured.	The automatic configuration process takes time. Please wait.
The audio files stored on components on the network, such as a PC, cannot be played back.	Windows Media Player 11 or Windows Media Player 12 is not currently installed on your PC.	Install Windows Media Player 11 or Windows Media Player 12 on your PC (page 36).
	Audio files were recorded in formats other than MP3, WAV (LPCM only), MPEG-4 AAC, FLAC, and WMA.	Play back audio files recorded in MP3, WAV (LPCM only), MPEG-4 AAC, FLAC, or WMA. Note that some audio files recorded in these formats may not be played back on this receiver.
	Audio files recorded in MPEG-4 AAC or FLAC are being played back on Windows Media Player 11 or Windows Media Player 12.	Audio files recorded in MPEG-4 AAC or FLAC cannot be played back on Windows Media Player 11 or Windows Media Player 12. Try using another server. Refer to the operation manual supplied with your server.
	The component connected to the network is not properly operated.	Check whether the component is affected by special circumstances or is in the sleep mode. Try rebooting the component if necessary.
	The component connected to the network does not permit file sharing.	Try changing the settings for the component connected to the network.
	The folder stored on the component connected to the network has been deleted or damaged.	Check the folder stored on the component connected to the network.
	Network connections could be restricted due to the computer's network settings, security settings, etc.	Check the computer's network settings, security settings, etc.
Cannot access the component connected to the network.	The component connected to the network is not properly set.	If the client is automatically authorized, you need to enter the corresponding information again. Check whether the connection status is set to "Do not authorize".
	There are no playable audio files on the component connected to the network.	Check the audio files stored on the component connected to the network.

Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
Audio playback is undesirably stopped or disturbed.	The audio file currently being played back was not recorded in a format playable on this receiver.	Check whether the audio file was recorded in a format supported by this receiver. Check whether the folder has been damaged or corrupted. Note that there are cases where even the audio files listed as playable on this receiver cannot be played back or displayed (page 39).
	The LAN cable is currently disconnected.	Connect the LAN cable properly (page 20).
	There is heavy traffic on the network with the Internet being accessed on the same network.	Use 100BASE-TX to access the components on the network.
	When in the DMR mode, depending on the external controller being used, playback may be interrupted when a volume operation is performed from the controller.	In this case, adjust the volume from the receiver or remote control.
Cannot access Windows Media Player 11 or Windows Media Player 12.	*In case of Windows Media Player 11:* You are currently logged onto the domain through your PC with Windows XP or Windows Vista installed. *In case of Windows Media Player 12:* You are currently logged onto the domain through your PC with Windows 7 installed.	Instead of logging onto the domain, log onto the local machine (page 37).
Cannot listen to Internet radio stations.	The firewall settings for components on the network are currently in operation.	Check the firewall settings for components on the network.
	You are currently disconnected from the Internet.	Check the connection settings for components on the network, and consult with your network service provider if necessary (page 64).
	The broadcasts from an Internet radio station are stopped or interrupted.	There are cases where you cannot listen to some Internet radio stations even when they are listed in the list of Internet radio stations on this receiver (page 37).
The Home Media Gallery cannot be operated with the buttons on the remote control.	The remote control is not currently set to the Home Media Gallery mode.	Press **HMG** to set the remote control to the Home Media Gallery mode (page 37).

Troubleshooting of wireless LAN

Network cannot be accessed via wireless LAN.

Wireless LAN converter's power is not on. (Wireless LAN converter's "Power", "WPS" and "Wireless" indicators are not all lit.)

- Check that the USB cable connecting the wireless LAN converter to the receiver's **DC OUTPUT for WIRELESS LAN** terminal is properly connected.

WLAN POW ERR is displayed on the receiver's display window.

- There is a problem with the wireless LAN converter's power supply. Turn the receiver's power off, then disconnect the USB cable, reconnect the USB cable and turn the receiver's power back on.
- If **WLAN POW ERR** is still displayed after repeating the above procedure several times, there is a problem with the receiver or the USB cable. Unplug the receiver from the wall and call a Pioneer authorized independent service company.

The LAN cable is not firmly connected.

- Firmly connect the LAN cable (page 21).

Wireless LAN converter and base unit (wireless LAN router, etc.) are too far apart or there is an obstacle between them.

- Improve the wireless LAN environment by moving the wireless LAN converter and base unit closer together, etc.

There is a microwave oven or other device generating electromagnetic waves near the wireless LAN environment.

- Use the system in a place away from microwave ovens or others device generating electromagnetic waves.
- Avoid using devices generating electromagnetic waves as much as possible when using the system with the wireless LAN.

Multiple wireless LAN converters are connected to the wireless LAN router.

- When connecting multiple wireless LAN converters, their IP addresses must be changed. For example, if the wireless LAN router's IP address is "192.168.1.1", set the first wireless LAN converter's IP address to "192.168.1.249", the second wireless LAN converter's IP address to "192.168.1.248", using values between 2 and 249 (such as "249" and "248") that are not assigned to other wireless LAN converters or to other devices.

Wireless LAN connections cannot be established between the wireless LAN converter and base unit (wireless LAN router, etc.).

- The wireless LAN converter must be set in order to establish wireless LAN connections. See *Wireless LAN Converter* on page 65 .

The wireless LAN converter is properly connected to the receiver and the wireless LAN converter's indicators are lit, but the wireless LAN converter cannot be set from the receiver (the settings screen cannot be displayed).

- If DHCP in the receiver's IP settings is set to OFF and the IP address has been set manually, the IP address set in the wireless LAN converter may not match. In the receiver's IP settings, set DHCP to ON. After the setting is completed, turn the receiver's power off. Next, turn the receiver's power back on and check whether the wireless LAN converter's settings can be displayed with the receiver.

If the settings can be displayed, change the IP address settings of the receiver and wireless LAN converter as necessary.

The IP address settings of the receiver and wireless LAN converter do not match the settings of the wireless LAN router, etc.

- Check the IP address settings of the receiver and wireless LAN converter (including the DHCP setting).
  If the receiver's DHCP setting is "ON", turn the receiver's power off, then turn the power back on.
  Check that the IP addresses of the receiver and wireless LAN converter match the settings of the wireless LAN router, etc.
  If the receiver's DHCP setting is "OFF", set an IP address matching the network of the base unit (wireless LAN router, etc.).
  For example, if the wireless LAN router's IP address is "192.168.1.1", set the receiver's IP address to "192.168.1.XXX" (*1), the subnet mask to "255.255.255.0", the gateway and DNS to "192.168.1.1".
  Next, set the wireless LAN converter's IP address to "192.168.1.249" (*2).
  (*1) Set the "XXX" in "192.168.1.XXX" to a number between 2 and 248 that is not assigned to other devices.
  (*2) Set the "249" in "192.168.1.249" to a number between 2 and 249 that is not assigned to other devices.

Try making the wireless LAN converter's advanced settings.

- The wireless LAN converter can be connected to a computer to make the advanced wireless LAN settings. For details, see the CD-ROM included for the wireless LAN converter. Check the settings of the wireless LAN router, etc., then change the settings of the wireless LAN converter.
  Note, however, that making the advanced wireless LAN settings will not necessarily improve the wireless LAN environment. Be careful when changing the settings.

The access point is set to conceal the SSID.

- In this case, the SSID may not be displayed on the access point list screen. If not, set the SSID, etc., by making the wireless LAN converter settings on the receiver manually.

The access point's security settings use WEP 152-bit length code key or shared key authentication.

- The receiver does not support WEP 152-bit length code key or shared key authentication.

Network connections cannot be established even when the above measures are taken.

- Reset the wireless LAN converter. After this, redo the wireless LAN converter's settings.
  About resetting
  1. Check that the wireless LAN converter's power is on.
  2. Press the wireless LAN converter's reset button for at least 3 seconds.
  3. Release the reset button.
  When the wireless LAN converter is restarted, the resetting procedure is completed.

About status messages

Refer to the following information when you come up with a status message while operating the Home Media Gallery.

Status messages	Descriptions
STARTING H.M.G.	A component on the network, including a PC, is currently being connected. Wait for a while.
Connection Down	The selected category or Internet radio station cannot be accessed.
File Format Error	Cannot be played back for some reasons.
Track Not Found	The selected song has not been found anywhere on the network.
Server Error	The selected server cannot be accessed.
Server Disconnected	The server has been disconnected.
empty	There are no files stored in the selected folder.
Preset Not Stored	The selected Internet radio station is not currently registered and saved.
Out of Range	The value entered is beyond the permitted range of the network settings.
License Error	The license for the contents to be played back is invalid.
Item Already Exists	This is displayed when the file you have attempted to register in the Favorites folder has already been registered.
Favorite List Full	This is displayed when you have attempted to register a file in the Favorites folder but the Favorites folder is already full.

If the problem is not solved after the troubleshooting above, if the screen freezes unexpectedly or if the buttons on the remote control or front panel stop working completely, do the following:

- Press ⏻ **STANDBY/ON** on the front panel to turn off the power, then turn the power back on.
- If the power cannot be turned off, press and hold ⏻ **STANDBY/ON** on the front panel for over 10 seconds. The power will turn off. (In this case, the various settings made on the receiver may be cleared.)

Important information regarding the HDMI connection

There are cases where you may not be able to route HDMI signals through this receiver (this depends on the HDMI-equipped component you are connecting-check with the manufacturer for HDMI compatibility information).
If you aren't receiving HDMI signals properly through this receiver (from your component), please try one of the following configurations when connecting up.

Configuration A

Use component video cables to connect the video output of your HDMI-equipped component to the receiver's component video input. The receiver can then convert the analog component video signal to a digital HDMI signal for transmission to the display. For this configuration, use the most convenient connection (digital is recommended) for sending audio to the receiver. See the operating instructions for more on audio connections.

Note

- The picture quality will change slightly during conversion.

Configuration B

Connect your HDMI-equipped component directly to the display using an HDMI cable. Then use the most convenient connection (digital is recommended) for sending audio to the receiver. See the operating instructions for more on audio connections. Set the display volume to minimum when using this configuration.

Note

- If your display only has one HDMI terminal, you can only receive HDMI video from the connected component.
- Depending on the component, audio output may be limited to the number of channels available from the connected display unit (for example audio output is reduced to 2 channels for a monitor with stereo audio limitations).
- If you want to switch the input function, you'll have to switch functions on both the receiver and your display unit.
- Since the sound is muted on the display when using the HDMI connection, you must adjust the volume on the display every time you switch input functions.

Cleaning the unit

- Use a polishing cloth or dry cloth to wipe off dust and dirt.
- When the surface is dirty, wipe with a soft cloth dipped in some neutral cleanser diluted five or six times with water, and wrung out well, and then wipe again with a dry cloth. Do not use furniture wax or cleansers.
- Never use thinners, benzene, insecticide sprays or other chemicals on or near this unit, since these will corrode the surface.

Surround sound formats

Below is a brief description of the main surround sound formats you'll find on BDs, DVDs, satellite, cable and terrestrial broadcasts, and video cassettes.

Dolby

The Dolby technologies are explained below. See http://www.dolby.com for more detailed information.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", "Surround EX" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

DTS

The DTS technologies are explained below. See http://www.dts.com for more detailed information.

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,226,616; 6,487,535; 7,212,872; 7,333,929; 7,392,195; 7,272,567 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio, and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

About iPod

"Made for iPod," "Made for iPhone," and "Made for iPad" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, iPhone, or iPad, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone, or iPad may affect wireless performance.
Apple, AirPlay, iPad, iPhone, iPod, iPod shuffle, iPod nano, iPod classic, iPod touch, iTunes and Mac are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

About FLAC

FLAC Decoder

Copyright © 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007
Josh Coalson
Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Auto Surround, ALC and Stream Direct with different input signal formats

The following charts show what you will hear with different input signal formats, depending on the Stream Direct mode (see *Using Stream Direct* on page 34) you have selected.

Stereo (2 channel) signal formats

Input signal format	Auto Surround / ALC / DIRECT	PURE DIRECT
Surround Back speaker(s): Connected		
Dolby Digital Surround	**DII Pro Logic IIx MOVIE**	**DII Pro Logic IIx MOVIE**
DTS Surround	**Neo:6 CINEMA**	**Neo:6 CINEMA**
Other stereo sources	Stereo playback	Stereo playback
Analog sources	*As above*	ANALOG DIRECT (stereo)
PCM sources	*As above*	PCM DIRECT
DVD-A sources	*As above*	*As above*
SACD sources	*As above*	Stereo playback
Surround Back speaker(s): Not connected		
Dolby Digital Surround	**DII Pro Logic II MOVIE**	**DII Pro Logic II MOVIE**
DTS Surround	**Neo:6 CINEMA**	**Neo:6 CINEMA**
Other stereo sources	Stereo playback	Stereo playback
Analog sources	*As above*	ANALOG DIRECT (stereo)
PCM sources	*As above*	PCM DIRECT
DVD-A sources	*As above*	*As above*
SACD sources	*As above*	Stereo playback

Multichannel signal formats

Input signal format	Auto Surround / ALC	PURE DIRECT / DIRECT
Surround Back speaker(s): Connected		
Dolby Digital EX (6.1 channel flagged) Dolby TrueHD EX (6.1 channel flagged)	**Dolby Digital EX** **Pro Logic IIx MOVIE** <a>	**Dolby Digital EX** **Pro Logic IIx MOVIE** <a>
DTS-HD Master Audio ES (6.1 channel flagged)	**DTS-ES** (Matrix)	**DTS-ES** (Matrix)
DTS-ES (6.1 channel sources/6.1 channel flagged)	**DTS-ES** (Matrix/Discrete)	**DTS-ES** (Matrix/Discrete)
DTS sources (5.1 channel encoding)	Straight decoding	Straight decoding
DTS-HD sources	*As above*	*As above*
Other 5.1/6.1/7.1 channel sources	*As above*	*As above*
Surround Back speaker(s): Not connected		
DVD-A sources/Multi-ch PCM	Straight decoding	Straight decoding
SACD sources (5.1 channel encoding)	*As above*	*As above*
Other 5.1/6.1/7.1 channel sources	*As above*	*As above*

a Unavailable with only one surround back speaker connected.

Glossary

Audio formats/Decoding

Dolby
The Dolby technologies are explained below. See http://www.dolby.com for more detailed information.

Dolby Digital
Dolby Digital is a multichannel digital audio coding system widely used in cinemas, and in the home for DVD and digital broadcast soundtracks.

Dolby TrueHD
Dolby TrueHD is the lossless encoding technology developed for high-definition optical discs in the upcoming era.

Dolby Digital Plus
Dolby Digital Plus is the audio technology for all high-definition programming and media. It combines the efficiency to meet future broadcast demands with the power and flexibility to realize the full audio potential expected in the upcoming high-definition era.

Dolby Digital Surround EX
Dolby Digital Surround EX (the EX stands for EXtended) is an extension of Dolby Digital encoding whereby a surround back channel is matrixed into the surround left/right channels for 6.1 channel playback. This allows for compatibility with Dolby Digital 5.1 channel decoding, as well as for decoding using Dolby Digital EX.

Dolby Pro Logic IIx and Dolby Surround
Dolby Pro Logic IIx is an improved version of the Dolby Pro Logic II (and Dolby Pro Logic) decoding system.
Dolby Surround is an encoding system which embeds surround sound information within a stereo soundtrack, which a Dolby Pro Logic decoder can then use for enhanced surround listening with greater sound detail.

Dolby Pro Logic IIz
Adding a pair of speakers above the front left and right speakers adds expressiveness in the vertical direction to the previous horizontally-oriented sound field. The height channel strengthens the sound field's sense of three-dimensionality and air, producing presence and expansion.

DTS
The DTS technologies are explained below. See http://www.dts.com for more detailed information.

DTS Digital Surround
DTS Digital Surround is a 5.1-channel audio coding system from DTS Inc. now widely used for DVD-Video, DVD-Audio, 5.1 music discs, digital broadcasts, and video games.

DTS-HD Master Audio
DTS-HD Master Audio is a technology that delivers master audio sources recorded in a professional studio to listeners without any loss of data, preserving audio quality.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio
A high definition audio technology by which signals can be transferred over HDMI cables.

DTS-ES
DTS-ES (the ES stands for Extended Surround) is a decoder that is capable of decoding both DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 and DTS-ES Matrix 6.1 encoded sources.

DTS Neo:6
DTS Neo:6 can generate 7.1 channel surround sound from any matrixed stereo source (such as video or TV) and from 5.1 channel sources.

DTS Neural Surround
DTS Neural Surround can generate 7.1 channel surround sound from any matrixed stereo source (such as video or TV).

Decoding
A technology for converting digital signals that have been compressed upon recording by a digital signal processing circuit, etc., into

the original signals. The term “decoding” (or “matrix decoding”) is also used for the technology which converts 2-channel sound sources into multiple channels or expands 5.1-channel signals into 6.1 or 7.1 channels.

Calibrating the sound field/ Improving the sound quality

Phase Control

The Phase Control technology incorporated into this receiver’s design provides coherent sound reproduction through the use of phase matching for an optimal sound image at your listening position.

Virtual Surround Back

When you’re not using surround back speakers, selecting this mode allows you to hear a virtual surround back channel through your surround speakers. You can choose to listen to sources with no surround back channel information.

Virtual Height

When you’re not using front height speakers, selecting this mode allows you to hear a virtual front height channel through your front speakers.

Auto Sound Retriever

The Auto Sound Retriever feature employs DSP technology to restore sound pressure and smooth jagged artifacts left over after compression.

With some audio inputs, the Sound Retriever effect is automatically optimized based on the bitrate information of the contents that have been input to achieve high sound quality.

Sound Retriever Air

Sound Retriever Air compensates for reduced sound quality due to compression when sending *Bluetooth* signals.

PQLS

Jitterless high quality playback is possible by connecting a PQLS-compatible player with HDMI connections.

ALC (Auto Level Control)

In the Auto level control (**ALC**) mode, this receiver equalizes playback sound levels. Also, the low and high frequency sounds, dialogs, surround effects, etc., that are difficult to hear when the volume is low are adjusted to be optimal for the volume level. This mode is particularly optimum when listening at night.

Front Stage Surround Advance

With the Front Stage Surround Advance feature, you can enjoy seamless, natural surround sound effects using only the front speakers, without deteriorating the quality of the original sound.

MCACC

The Auto MCACC Setup provides a quick but accurate surround sound setup, which includes the advanced features of Professional Acoustic Calibration EQ.

HDMI

Control with HDMI function

Synchronized operations below with a **Control** with HDMI-compatible Pioneer TV or Blu-ray Disc player or with a component of another make that supports the **Control** with HDMI functions are possible when the component is connected to the receiver using an HDMI cable.

- The receiver’s volume can be set and the sound can be muted using the TV’s remote control.
- The receiver’s input switches over automatically when the TV’s input is changed or a **Control** with HDMI-compatible component is played.
- The receiver’s power is also set to standby, when the TV’s power is set to standby.

ARC (Audio Return Channel)

When a TV supporting the HDMI ARC (Audio Return Channel) function is connected to the receiver, the sound of the TV can be input via the **HDMI OUT** terminal.

The sound of the TV can be input from the receiver’s **HDMI OUT** terminal, so connection with the TV can be completed with a single HDMI cable.

Network function

AirPlay

This receiver supports AirPlay audio streaming from iPod touch (2nd, 3rd and 4th generations), iPhone 4, iPhone 3GS, iPad with iOS 4.2 or later, and iTunes 10.1 (Mac and PC) or later.

For more information, see the Apple website (http://www.apple.com).

DLNA

The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a cross-industry organization of consumer electronics, computing industry and mobile device companies. Digital Living provides consumers with easy sharing of digital media through a wired or wireless network in the home.

vTuner

vTuner is a paid online database service that allows you to listen to radio and TV broadcasts on the Internet. vTuner lists thousands of stations from over 100 different countries around the globe. For more detail about vTuner, visit the following website:

http://www.radio-pioneer.com

“This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of NEMS and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from NEMS and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.”

aacPlus

AAC decoder uses aacPlus developed by Coding Technologies. (www.codingtechnologies.com)

FLAC

FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) is an audio format allows lossless codec. Audio is compressed in FLAC without any loss in quality.

For more details about FLAC, visit the following website:

http://flac.sourceforge.net/

Windows Media

Windows Media is a multimedia framework for media creation and distribution for Microsoft Windows. Windows Media is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries. Use an application licensed by Microsoft Corporation to author, distribute, or play Windows Media formatted content. Using an application unauthorized by Microsoft Corporation is subject to malfunction.

Windows Media Player 11/ Windows Media Player 12

Windows Media Player is software to deliver music, photos and movies from a Microsoft Windows computer to home stereo systems and TVs.

With this software, you can play back files stored on the PC through various devices wherever you like in your home.

This software can be downloaded from Microsoft’s website.

- Windows Media Player 11 (for Windows XP or Windows Vista)

• Windows Media Player 12 (for Windows 7)
For more information check the official Microsoft website.

Windows Media DRM
Windows Media DRM is a DRM (Digital Rights Management) service for the Windows Media platform. It is designed to provide secure delivery of audio and/or video content over an IP network to a PC or other playback device in such a way that the distributor can control how that content is used. The WMDRM-protected content can only be played back on a component supporting the WMDRM service.

Router
A device for relaying data flowing on a network to another network. In homes, routers often also function as DHCP servers. Products with built-in wireless LAN access points are called "wireless LAN routers".

DHCP
Abbreviation of Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol for automatically assigning such setting information as IP addresses within network connections. This offers convenience in that, when enabled, it allows network functions to be used simply by connecting the devices to the network.

Wireless LAN/Wi-Fi
"Wi-Fi" (Wireless Fidelity) is a trademark coined by the Wi-Fi Alliance trade association to increase recognition of wireless LAN standards. With the increase in the number of devices connected to computers in recent years, Wi-Fi offers the advantage of eliminating the complexity of making connections with LAN cables by using wireless connection. As a way of reassuring users, products that have passed interoperability tests carry the logo "Wi-Fi Certified" to indicate that compatibility is assured.

WPS
Abbreviation of Wi-Fi Protected Setup. A standard established by the Wi-Fi Alliance industry group for a function allowing settings related to interconnection of WPS-compatible wireless LAN devices and encryption to be made with simple operations. There are a number of methods, including push-button configuration and PIN code configuration. This AV receiver supports both push-button configuration and PIN code configuration.

SSID
Abbreviation of Service Set IDentifier. A wireless LAN access point identifier. Can be set as desired using up to 32 characters of English letters and numbers.

Bluetooth function

Bluetooth wireless technology
A short-range wireless communications standard for digital devices. Information is exchanged between devices several meters to several tens of meters apart using radio waves. It uses radio waves on the 2.4 GHz band which does not require applications for licenses or usage registration for applications conducting wireless exchange of digital information at relatively low speeds, such as computer mouses and keyboards, mobile phones, smartphones, text and audio information for PDAs, etc.

Pairing
"Pairing" must be done before you start playback of *Bluetooth* wireless technology content using the *Bluetooth* ADAPTER. Make sure to perform pairing the first time you operate the system or any time pairing data is cleared.
The pairing step is necessary to register the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device to enable *Bluetooth* communications. For more details, see also the operating instructions of your *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.

- Pairing is required when you first use the *Bluetooth* wireless technology device and *Bluetooth* ADAPTER.
- To enable *Bluetooth* communication, pairing should be done with both your system and *Bluetooth* wireless technology device.

Receiver function

Operation Mode
This receiver is equipped with a great number of functions and settings. The Operation Mode feature is provided for users who find it difficult to master all these functions and settings.

Features index

Operation Mode
See *Operation Mode Setup* on page 25 .

AVNavigator
See *About using AVNavigator (included CD-ROM)* on page 5 .

Full Auto MCACC
See *Automatically conducting optimum sound tuning (Full Auto MCACC)* on page 23 .

Automatic MCACC (Expert)
See *Automatic MCACC (Expert)* on page 56 .

Manual MCACC setup
See *Manual MCACC setup* on page 58 .

PQLS
See *Setting the PQLS function* on page 42 .

Phase Control
See *Better sound using Phase Control* on page 34 .

Standing Wave
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Phase Control Plus
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Auto Sound Retriever
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

ALC (Auto Level Control)
See *Auto playback* on page 33 .

Front Stage Surround Advance
See *Listening in surround sound* on page 33 .

Sound Retriever Air
See *Listening in surround sound* on page 33 .

Dialog Enhancement
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Internet radio
See *Listening to Internet radio stations* on page 37 .

vTuner
See *Listening to Internet radio stations* on page 37 .

DLNA
See *About network playback* on page 38 .

AirPlay
See *Using AirPlay on iPod touch, iPhone, iPad and iTunes* on page 36 .

Wireless LAN
See *Connecting to a wireless LAN* on page 21 .

Playback High Resolution audio file
See *About playable file formats* on page 39 .

Slideshow
See *Playing back photo files stored on a USB memory device* on page 28 .

***Bluetooth* ADAPTER**
See *Bluetooth ADAPTER for Wireless Enjoyment of Music* on page 31 .

ARC (Audio Return Channel)
See *HDMI Setup* on page 41 .

SACD Gain
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Auto delay
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Height Gain (Dolby Pro Logic IIz Height option)
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Virtual Height
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Virtual Surround Back
See *Setting the Audio options* on page 44 .

Digital Video Converter
See *Setting the Video options* on page 46 .

Pure Cinema
See *Setting the Video options* on page 46 .

Progressive Motion
See *Setting the Video options* on page 46 .

Advanced Video Adjust
See *Setting the Video options* on page 46 .

Auto Power Down
See *The Other Setup menu* on page 66 .

Specifications

Audio Section

Rated power output (1 kHz, 6 Ω, 1 %)
Front, Center, Surround, Surround back
.....150 W per channel
Rated power output
(20 Hz to 20 kHz, 8 Ω, 0.09 %)
Front, Center, Surround, Surround back
.....105 W per channel
Total harmonic distortion
.....0.06 % (20 Hz to 20 kHz, 50 W/ch, 8 Ω)
Guaranteed speaker impedance..... 6 Ω to 16 Ω
Signal-to-Noise Ratio
(IHF, short circuited, A network)
LINE .....100 dB
Frequency Response .....5 Hz to 100 000 Hz $^{+0}_{-3}$ dB
(Pure Direct Mode)
Input (Sensitivity/Impedance)
LINE .....315 mV/47 kΩ
Output (Level/Impedance)
REC.....315 mV/2.2 kΩ

Tuner Section

Frequency Range (FM) .....87.5 MHz to 108 MHz
Antenna Input (FM)..... 75 Ω unbalanced
Frequency Range (AM).....531 kHz to 1602 kHz
Antenna (AM)..... Loop antenna (balanced)

Video Section

Signal level
Composite Video.....1 Vp-p (75 Ω)
Component Video
.....Y: 1.0 Vp-p (75 Ω), PB/PR: 0.7 Vp-p (75 Ω)
Corresponding maximum resolution
Component Video
..... 1080p (1125p) (Video convert off)

Digital In/Out Section

HDMI terminal .....19-pin (Not DVI)
HDMI output type.....5 V, 100 mA
USB terminal.....USB2.0 Full Speed (Type A)
iPod terminal..... USB, and Video (Composite)
ADAPTER PORT terminal.....5 V, 100 mA
WIRELESS LAN ADAPTER terminal
.....5 V, 600 mA

Integrated Control Section

Control (SR) terminal.....ø 3.5 Mini-jack (MONO)
Control (IR) terminal .....ø 3.5 Mini-jack (MONO)
IR signal.....High Active (High Level: 2.0 V)

Network Section

LAN terminal .....10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX

Miscellaneous

Power requirements
..... AC 220 V to 230 V, 50 Hz/60 Hz
Power consumption.....550 W
In standby
.....0.3 W (HDMI Setup – Control : OFF)
0.4 W (HDMI Setup – Control : ON)
Dimensions
..... 435 mm (W) x 168 mm (H) x 362.5 mm (D)
Weight (without package) ..... 10 kg

Number of Furnished Parts

MCACC Setup microphone..... 1
Remote control unit..... 1
AAA size IEC R03 dry cell batteries..... 2
iPod cable..... 1
AM loop antenna..... 1
FM wire antenna 1
Power cord
CD-ROM (AVNavigator)
Quick start guide

Note

- These specifications are applicable when the power supply is 230 V.
- Specifications and the design are subject to possible modifications without notice, due to improvements.
- *This product includes FontAvenue® fonts licensed by NEC Corporation. FontAvenue is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.*

Preset code list

You should have no problem controlling a component if you find the manufacturer in this list, but please note that there are cases where codes for the manufacturer in the list will not work for the model that you are using. There are also cases where only certain functions may be controllable after assigning the proper preset code.

Important

- We do not guarantee the operations of all the manufacturers and devices listed. Operation may not be possible even if a preset code is entered.
  If you can't find a preset code that matches the component you want to control, you can still teach the remote individual commands from another remote control (see *Programming signals from other remote controls* on page 51).

TV

Pioneer 0180, 0185, 0186, 0187, 0189, 0192, 0193, 0198
A.R. Systems 0040
Acme 0026
Acura 0027, 0039
ADC 0025,
Admiral 0023, 0024, 0025, 0030, 0031
Adyson 0026, 0113, 0114
Agashi 0113, 0114
Agazi 0025
Aiko 0026, 0027, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Aim 0040
Aiwa 0084
Akai 0027, 0028, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Akiba 0028, 0040
Akura 0025, 0028, 0039, 0040
Alaron 0113
Alba 0010, 0026, 0027, 0028, 0032, 0035, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0075, 0078, 0088, 0113
Alcyon 0017
Allorgan 0114
Allstar 0034, 0040
AMOi 0109
Amplivision 0010, 0026, 0041, 0114
Amstrad 0025, 0027, 0028, 0039, 0040
Anam 0027
Anglo 0027, 0039
Anitech 0017, 0025, 0027, 0039, 0040
Ansonic 0010, 0018, 0027, 0029, 0039, 0040
Arcam 0113, 0114
Arcam Delta 0026
Aristona 0034, 0037, 0040
Arthur Martin 0041
ASA 0023, 0031
Asberg 0017, 0034, 0040
Astra 0027
Asuka 0025, 0026, 0028, 0113, 0114
Atlantic 0026, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0113
Atori 0027, 0039
Auchan 0041
Audiosonic 0010, 0026, 0027, 0028, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
AudioTon 0010, 0026, 0114
Ausind 0017
Autovox 0017, 0023, 0025, 0026, 0114
Awa 0113, 0114
Baird 0114
Bang & Olufsen 0023, 0115
Basic Line 0027, 0028, 0034, 0039, 0040, 0114
Bastide 0026, 0114
Baur 0037, 0040
Bazin 0114
Beko 0010, 0035, 0040, 0060
Benq 0104
Beon 0034, 0037, 0040
Best 0010
Bestar 0010, 0034, 0040
Binatone 0026, 0114
Blue Sky 0028, 0040
Blue Star 0036
Boots 0026, 0114
BPL 0036, 0040
Brandt 0033, 0038, 0042, 0044
Brinkmann 0040
Brionvega 0023, 0034, 0037, 0040
Britannia 0026, 0113, 0114
Bruns 0023
BTC 0028
Bush 0027, 0028, 0030, 0032, 0034, 0036, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0065, 0078, 0114
Capsonic 0025
Carena 0040
Carrefour 0032
Cascade 0027, 0039, 0040
Casio 0106
Cathay 0034, 0037, 0040
CCE 0114
Centurion 0034, 0037, 0040
Century 0023
CGE 0010, 0017
Cimline 0027, 0039
City 0027, 0039
Clarivox 0037
Clatronic 0010, 0017, 0025, 0026, 0027, 0028, 0034, 0035, 0039, 0040, 0114
CMS 0113
CMS Hightec 0114
Concorde 0027, 0039
Condor 0010, 0026, 0034, 0035, 0039, 0040, 0113
Contec 0026, 0027, 0032, 0039, 0113
Continental Edison 0033
Cosmel 0027, 0039
Crosley 0017, 0023
Crown 0010, 0017, 0027, 0034, 0035, 0037, 0039, 0040
CS Electronics 0026, 0028, 0113
CTC Clatronic 0029
Cybertron 0028
Daewoo 0013, 0026, 0027, 0034, 0039, 0040, 0054, 0064, 0091, 0113, 0114
Dainichi 0028, 0113
Dansai 0025, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0113, 0114
Dantax 0010, 0037
Dawa 0040
Daytron 0027, 0039
De Graaf 0030
Decca 0026, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
Denver 0098, 0103
Desmet 0034, 0037, 0040
Diamant 0040
Diamond 0113
Dixi 0027, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0114
DTS 0027, 0039
Dual 0026, 0040, 0114
Dual-Tec 0026, 0027
Dumont 0023, 0026, 0029, 0114
Dux 0037
Dynatron 0034, 0037, 0040
Elbe 0010, 0018, 0040, 0114
Elcit 0023
Electa 0036
ELECTRO TECH 0027
Elin 0026, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0113
Elite 0028, 0034, 0040
Elman 0029
Elta 0027, 0039, 0113
Emerson 0010, 0023, 0040
Epson 0101
Erres 0034, 0037, 0040
ESC 0114
Etron 0027
Eurofeel 0114, 0025
Euroline 0037
Euroman 0010, 0025, 0026, 0034, 0040, 0113, 0114
Europhon 0026, 0029, 0034, 0040, 0113, 0114
Expert 0041
Exquisit 0040
Fenner 0027, 0039
Ferguson 0033, 0037, 0038, 0042
Fidelity 0026, 0030, 0040, 0113
Filsai 0114
Finlandia 0030
Finlux 0017, 0023, 0026, 0029, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
Firstline 0026, 0027, 0034, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Fisher 0010, 0023, 0026, 0032, 0035, 0114
Flint 0034, 0040
Formenti 0017, 0023, 0024, 0026, 0037, 0113
Formenti/Phoenix 0113
Fortress 0023, 0024
Fraba 0010, 0040
Friac 0010
Frontech 0025, 0027, 0030, 0031, 0039, 0114
Fujitsu 0114
Fujitsu General 0114
Funai 0025
Galaxi 0040, 0035
Galaxis 0010, 0040
GBC 0027, 0032, 0039
Geant Casino 0041
GEC 0026, 0031, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
Geloso 0027, 0030, 0039
General Technic 0027, 0039
Genexxa 0028, 0031, 0034, 0040
Giant 0114
GoldHand 0113
Goldline 0040
Goldstar 0010, 0026, 0027, 0030, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Goodmans 0025, 0027, 0032, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0107, 0114
Gorenje 0010, 0035
GPM 0028
Graetz 0031
Granada 0017, 0026, 0030, 0032, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0041, 0114
Grandin 0027, 0028, 0036, 0037
Gronic 0114
Grundig 0009, 0010, 0017, 0040, 0047
Halifax 0025, 0026, 0113, 0114
Hampton 0026, 0113, 0114
Hanseatic 0010, 0018, 0026, 0027, 0032, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0114
Hantarex 0027, 0039, 0040
Hantor 0040
Harwood 0039, 0040
HCM 0025, 0026, 0027, 0036, 0039, 0040, 0114
Hema 0039, 0114
Higashi 0113
HiLine 0040
Hinari 0027, 0028, 0032, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040
Hisawa 0028, 0036, 0041
Hitachi 0022, 0026, 0030, 0031, 0032, 0040, 0076, 0111, 0114
Hornyphon 0034, 0040
Hoshai 0028
Huanyu 0026, 0113
Hygashi 0026, 0113, 0114
Hyper 0026, 0027, 0039, 0113, 0114
Hypson 0025, 0026, 0034, 0036, 0037, 0040, 0041, 0114
Iberia 0040
ICE 0025, 0026, 0027, 0028, 0034, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
ICeS 0113
Imperial 0010, 0017, 0031, 0034, 0035, 0040
Indiana 0034, 0037, 0040
Ingelen 0031
Ingersol 0027, 0039
Inno Hit 0017, 0026, 0027, 0028, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0114
Innovation 0025, 0027
Interactive 0010
Interbuy 0027, 0039
Interfunk 0010, 0023, 0031, 0034, 0037, 0040
International 0113
Intervision 0010, 0025, 0026, 0029, 0040, 0114
Irradio 0017, 0027, 0028, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040
Isukai 0028, 0040
ITC 0026, 0114
ITS 0028, 0034, 0036, 0040, 0113
ITT 0027, 0031
ITV 0027, 0037, 0040

JVC 0019, 0020, 0032, 0034, 0077, 5064
Kaisui 0026, 0027, 0028, 0036, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Kamosonic 0026
Kamp 0026, 0113
Kapsch 0031
Karcher 0010, 0026, 0027, 0037, 0040
Kawasho 0113
Kendo 0010, 0029, 0030, 0040
KIC 0114
Kingsley 0026, 0113
Kneissel 0010, 0018, 0040
Kolster 0034, 0040
Konka 0028
Korpel 0034, 0037, 0040
Korting 0010, 0023
Kosmos 0040
Koyoda 0027
KTV 0026, 0114
Kyoto 0113, 0114
Lasat 0010
Lenco 0027, 0039
Lenoir 0026, 0027, 0039
Leyco 0025, 0034, 0037, 0040
LG 0010, 0021, 0026, 0027, 0030, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0071, 0074, 0081, 0105, 0113, 0114
LG/GoldStar 0014
Liesenk 0037
Liesenkotter 0040
Life 0025, 0027
Lifetec 0025, 0027, 0039, 0040
Lloyds 0039
Loewe 0010, 0018, 0040, 0051, 0052
Loewe Opta 0023, 0034, 0037
Luma 0030, 0037, 0039, 0040
Lumatron 0030, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
Lux May 0034
Luxor 0026, 0030, 0114
M Electronic 0026, 0027, 0031, 0033, 0034, 0037
Magnadyne 0023, 0029, 0037
Magnafon 0017, 0026, 0029, 0113
Magnum 0025, 0027
Mandor 0025
Manesth 0025, 0026, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
Marantz 0034, 0037, 0040
Marelli 0023
Mark 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Masuda 0114
Matsui 0026, 0027, 0030, 0032, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0114
Mediator 0034, 0037, 0040
Medion 0025, 0027, 0040
M-Electronic 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Melvox 0041
Memorex 0027, 0039
Memphis 0027, 0039
Mercury 0039, 0040
Metz 0023, 0184, 0185, 0186, 0187
Micromaxx 0025, 0027
Microstar 0025, 0027
Minerva 0017
Minoka 0034, 0040
Mitsubishi 0023, 0032, 0034, 0040, 0085
Mivar 0010, 0017, 0018, 0026, 0113, 0114
Motion 0017
MTC 0010, 0113
Multi System 0037
Multitech 0010, 0026, 0027, 0029, 0030, 0032, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Murphy 0026, 0113
Naonis 0030
NEC 0032, 0114
Neckermann 0010, 0023, 0026, 0030, 0034, 0035, 0037, 0040, 0114
NEI 0034, 0037, 0040
Neufunk 0039, 0040
New Tech 0027, 0034, 0039, 0040, 0114
New World 0028
Nicamagic 0026, 0113
Nikkai 0025, 0026, 0028, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Nobliko 0017, 0026, 0029, 0113
Nokia 0031
Nordic 0114
Nordmende 0023, 0031, 0033, 0034
Nordvision 0037
Novatronic 0040
Oceanic 0031, 0041
Okano 0010, 0035, 0040
ONCEAS 0026
Opera 0040
Orbit 0034, 0040
Orion 0027, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0079
Orline 0040
Osaki 0025, 0026, 0028, 0040, 0114
Oso 0028
Otto Versand 0024, 0026, 0032, 0034, 0036, 0037, 0040, 0114
Pael 0026, 0113
Palladium 0010, 0026, 0035, 0040, 0114
Palsonic 0114
Panama 0025, 0026, 0027, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Panasonic 0008, 0031, 0040, 0043, 0049, 0099, 0102, 0194, 0191, 0195, 0196, 0197, 0190
Panavision 0040
Pathe Cinema 0010, 0018, 0026, 0041, 0113
Pausa 0027, 0039
Perdio 0040, 0113
Perfekt 0040
Philco 0010, 0017, 0023, 0040
Philharmonic 0026, 0114
Philips 0000, 0002, 0023, 0026, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0045, 0048, 0050, 0055, 0056, 0058, 0059, 0067, 0068, 0080, 0081, 0087, 0090, 0097, 0100
Phoenix 0010, 0023, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0113
Phonola 0023, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0113
Plantron 0025, 0034, 0039, 0040
Playsonic 0114
Poppy 0027, 0039
Prandoni-Prince 0017, 0030
Precision 0026, 0114
Prima 0027, 0031, 0039
Profex 0027, 0039
Profi-Tronic 0034, 0040
Proline 0034, 0040
Prosonic 0010, 0026, 0037, 0040, 0113, 0114, 0117
Protech 0025, 0026, 0027, 0029, 0034, 0037, 0114
Provision 0037, 0040
Pye 0034, 0037, 0040, 0083
Pymi 0027, 0039
Quandra Vision 0041
Quelle 0025, 0026, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
Questa 0032
Radialva 0040
Radio Shack 0040
Radiola 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
Radiomarelli 0023, 0040
Radiotone 0010, 0034, 0039, 0040
Rank 0032
Recor 0040
Redstar 0040
Reflex 0040
Revox 0010, 0034, 0037, 0040,
Rex 0025, 0030, 0031
RFT 0010, 0018, 0023
Rhapsody 0113
R-Line 0034, 0037, 0040
Roadstar 0025, 0027, 0028, 0039
Robotron 0023
Rowa 0113, 0114
Royal Lux 0010
RTF 0023
Saba 0023, 0031, 0033, 0038, 0042, 0044
Saisho 0025, 0026, 0027, 0039, 0114
Salora 0030, 0031
Sambers 0017, 0029
Samsung 0004, 0005, 0010, 0025, 0026, 0027, 0034, 0035, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0062, 0063, 0066, 0089, 0093, 0113, 0114
Sandra 0026, 0113, 0114
Sansui 0034, 0040
Sanyo 0010, 0018, 0026, 0032, 0039, 0072, 0113, 0114
SBR 0037, 0040
SCHAUB LORENTZ 0031
Schneider 0026, 0028, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0075, 0114
SEG 0025, 0026, 0029, 0032, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0075, 0113, 0114
SEI 0040
SEI-Sinudyne 0023, 0029, 0031
Seleco 0030, 0031, 0032
Sencora 0027, 0039
Sentra 0039
Serino 0113
Sharp 0015, 0016, 0024, 0032, 0069, 0092
Siarem 0023, 0029, 0040
Sierra 0034, 0040
Siesta 0010
Silva 0113
Silver 0032
Singer 0023, 0029, 0041
Sinudyne 0023, 0029, 0037, 0040
Skantic 0031
Solavox 0031
Sonitron 0010, 0114
Sonoko 0025, 0026, 0027, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0114
Sonolor 0031, 0041
Sontec 0010, 0034, 0037, 0040
Sony 0001, 0003, 0027, 0032, 0046, 0053, 0057, 0070, 0073, 0082, 0086, 0096, 0110, 0112
Sound & Vision 0028, 0029
Soundwave 0034, 0037, 0040
Standard 0026, 0027, 0028, 0034, 0039, 0040, 0114
Starlight 0037
Starlite 0039, 0040
Stenway 0036
Stern 0030, 0031
Strato 0039, 0040
Stylandia 0114
Sunkai 0027,
Sunstar 0039, 0040
Sunwood 0027, 0034, 0039, 0040
Superla 0026, 0113, 0114
SuperTech 0039, 0040, 0113
Supra 0027, 0039
Susumu 0028
Sutron 0027, 0039
Sydney 0026, 0113, 0114
Sysline 0037
Sytong 0113
Tandy 0024, 0026, 0028, 0031, 0114
Tashiko 0029, 0030, 0032, 0113, 0114
Tatung 0026, 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
TCM 0025, 0027
Teac 0040, 0114
Tec 0026, 0027, 0039, 0114
TEDELEX 0114
Teleavia 0033
Telecor 0040, 0114
Telefunken 0033, 0034, 0040, 0042
Telegazi 0040
Telemeister 0040
Telesonic 0040
Telestar 0040
Teletech 0027, 0037, 0039, 0040
Teleton 0026, 0114
Televideon 0113
Televiso 0041
Tensai 0027, 0028, 0034, 0039, 0040, 0114
Tesmet 0034
Tevion 0025, 0027
Texet 0026, 0039, 0113, 0114
Thomson 0006, 0007, 0026, 0033, 0034, 0038, 0040, 0042, 0044, 0095
Thorn 0037, 0040
Tokai 0034, 0040, 0114
Tokyo 0026, 0113
Tomashi 0036
Toshiba 0011, 0012, 0032, 0061, 0094, 0114
Towada 0031, 0114
Trakton 0114
Trans Continens 0040, 0114
Transtec 0113
Trident 0114
Triumph 0040
Vestel 0030, 0031, 0034, 0035, 0037, 0040, 0114
Vexa 0027, 0037, 0039, 0040
Victor 0032, 0034
VIDEOLOGIC 0113
Videologique 0026, 0028, 0113, 0114
VideoSystem 0034, 0040
Videotechnic 0113, 0114
Viewsonic 0108
Visiola 0026, 0113
Vision 0034, 0040, 0114
Vortec 0034, 0037, 0040
Voxson 0017, 0023, 0030, 0031, 0034, 0040
Waltham 0026, 0040, 0114
Watson 0034, 0037, 0040
Watt Radio 0026, 0029, 0113
Wega 0023, 0032, 0040
Wegavox 0039
Weltblick 0034, 0037, 0040, 0114
White Westinghouse 0026, 0029, 0037, 0040, 0113
Xrypton 0040
Yamishi 0040, 0114
Yokan 0040
Yoko 0010, 0025, 0026, 0027, 0028, 0034, 0037, 0039, 0040, 0113, 0114
Yorx 0028
Zanussi 0030, 0114

DVD

If operations are not possible using the preset codes below, you may be able to conduct operations with the preset codes for the **BD**, **DVR (BDR, HDR)**.

Pioneer 2246, 2215
AEG 2093
Aiwa 2054
Akai 2001
Akura 2091
Alba 2027, 2038, 2048
Amitech 2093
AMW 2094
Awa 2094
Bang & Olufsen 2096
Bellagio 2094
Best Buy 2090
Brainwave 2093
Brandt 2017, 2044
Bush 2027, 2048, 2082, 2089
Cambridge Audio 2085
CAT 2087, 2088
Centrum 2088
CGV 2085, 2093
Cinetec 2094
Clatronic 2089
Coby 2095
Conia 2082
Continental Edison 2094
Crown 2093
C-Tech 2086
CyberHome 2008, 2037
Daenyx 2094
Daewoo 2035, 2059, 2093, 2094
Daewoo International 2094
Dalton 2092
Dansai 2084, 2093
Daytek 2010, 2033, 2094
Dayton 2094
DEC 2089
Decca 2093
Denon 2066, 2068
Denver 2069, 2089, 2091, 2095
Denzel 2083
Diamond 2085, 2086
DK Digital 2034
Dmtech 2000
Dual 2083
DVX 2086
Easy Home 2090
Eclipse 2085
Electrohome 2093
Elin 2093
Elta 2047, 2093
Enzer 2083
Finlux 2085, 2093
Gericom 2050
Global Solutions 2086
Global Sphere 2086
Goodmans 2027, 2070, 2089
Graetz 2083
Grundig 2053
Grunkel 2093
H&B 2089
Haaz 2085, 2086
HiMAX 2090
Hitachi 2015, 2083, 2090
Innovation 2002
JVC 2024, 2041, 2057
Kansai 2095
Kennex 2093
Kenwood 2051
KeyPlug 2093
Kiiro 2093
Kingavon 2089
Kiss 2083
Koda 2089
KXD 2090
Lawson 2086
Lecson 2084
Lenco 2089, 2093
LG 2016, 2020, 2040, 2043, 2065, 2076
Life 2002
Lifetec 2002
Limit 2086
Loewe 2056
LogicLab 2086
Magnavox 2089
Majestic 2095
Marantz 2062
Marquant 2093
Matsui 2044
Mecotek 2093
Medion 2002
MiCO 2085
Micromaxx 2002
Microstar 2002
Minoka 2093
Mizuda 2089, 2090
Monyka 2083
Mustek 2006
Mx Onda 2085
Naiko 2093
Neufunk 2083
Nevir 2093
NU-TEC 2082
Onkyo 2072
Optim 2084
Optimus 2004
Orava 2089
Orbit 2094
Orion 2061
P&B 2089
Pacific 2086
Panasonic 2018, 2019, 2026, 2032, 2036, 2075
Philips 2005, 2011, 2022, 2023, 2031, 2039, 2062
Pointer 2093
Portland 2093
Powerpoint 2094
Prosonic 2095
Provision 2089
Raite 2083
RedStar 2091, 2093, 2095
Reoc 2086
Roadstar 2021, 2089
Ronin 2094
Rowa 2082
Rownsonic 2088
Saba 2017, 2044
Sabaki 2086
Saivod 2093
Samsung 2015, 2042, 2063, 2078, 2081
Sansui 2085, 2086, 2093
Sanyo 2045, 2071
ScanMagic 2006
Schaub Lorenz 2093
Schneider 2000
Scientific Labs 2086
Scott 2025, 2092
SEG 2021, 2083, 2086, 2094
Sharp 2002, 2046, 2079
Sigmatek 2090
Silva 2091
Singer 2085, 2086
Skymaster 2058, 2086
Skyworth 2091
Slim Art 2093
SM Electronic 2086
Sony 2009, 2013, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2055, 2080
Soundmaster 2086
Soundmax 2086
Spectra 2094
Standard 2086
Star Cluster 2086
Starmedia 2089
Sunkai 2093
Supervision 2086
Synn 2086
Tatung 2035, 2093
TCM 2002
Teac 2067, 2082, 2086
Tec 2091
Technika 2093
Telefunken 2088
Tensai 2093
Tevion 2002, 2086, 2092
Thomson 2003, 2017, 2060, 2064
Tokai 2083, 2091
Toshiba 2007, 2061, 2073, 2074, 2077
TRANScontinents 2094
Trio 2093
TruVision 2090
Wharfedale 2085, 2086
Xbox 2003
Xlogic 2086, 2093
XMS 2093
Yamada 2094
Yamaha 2011
Yamakawa 2083, 2094
Yukai 2006, 2052

BD

If operations are not possible using the preset codes below, you may be able to conduct operations with the preset codes for the **DVD**, **DVR (BDR, HDR)**.

Pioneer 2247, 2248
Denon 2212, 2213, 2214
Hitachi 2209, 2210, 2211
JVC 2192, 2193, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198
Kenwood 2109
LG 2188, 2189
Marantz 2204, 2205
Mitsubishi 2202, 2203
Onkyo 2191
Panasonic 2179, 2180, 2181
Philips 2182
Samsung 2184
Sharp 2206, 2207, 2208
Sony 2185, 2186, 2187, 2194
Toshiba 2190, 2164
Yamaha 2199, 2200, 2201

DVR (BDR, HDR)

If operations are not possible using the preset codes below, you may be able to conduct operations with the preset codes for the **DVD**, **BD**.

Pioneer 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245
Panasonic 2165, 2171
Sharp 2169, 2177
Sony 2170, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2178
Toshiba 2176

VCR

Pioneer 1077
Adyson 1017
Aiwa 1000, 1001, 1002
Akai 1001
Akiba 1007, 1017
Akura 1001, 1007, 1017
Alba 1002, 1003, 1004, 1007, 1017, 1018
Ambassador 1004
Amstrad 1000, 1017, 1018
Anitech 1007, 1017
ASA 1005, 1006
Asuka 1000, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1017
Audiosonic 1018
Baird 1000, 1001, 1003, 1018
Bang & Olufsen 1019
Basic Line 1002, 1003, 1004, 1007, 1017, 1018
Baur 1006
Bestar 1003, 1004, 1018
Black Panther Line 1003, 1018
Blaupunkt 1006
Bondstec 1004, 1017
Bush 1002, 1003, 1007, 1017, 1018
Cathay 1018
Catron 1004
CGE 1000, 1001
Cimline 1002, 1007, 1017
Clatronic 1004, 1017
Condor 1003, 1004, 1018
Crown 1003, 1004, 1007, 1017, 1018
Daewoo 1003, 1004, 1018
Dansai 1007, 1017, 1018
Dantax 1002
Daytron 1003, 1018
De Graaf 1006
Decca 1000, 1001, 1006
Denko 1017
Dual 1001, 1027, 1018
Dumont 1000, 1006
Elbe 1018
Elcatech 1017
Elsay 1017
Elta 1007, 1017, 1018
Emerson 1017
ESC 1003, 1018
Etzuko 1007, 1017
Ferguson 1001
Fidelity 1000, 1017
Finlandia 1006
Finlux 1000, 1001, 1006
Firstline 1002, 1005, 1007, 1017
Flint 1002
Formenti/Phoenix 1006
Frontech 1004
Fujitsu 1000
Funai 1000
Galaxy 1000
GBC 1004, 1007

GEC 1006
Geloso 1007
General 1004
General Technic 1002
GoldHand 1007, 1017
Goldstar 1000, 1015
Goodmans 1000, 1003, 1004, 1005, 1007, 1017, 1018
Graetz 1001
Granada 1006
Grandin 1000, 1003, 1004, 1005, 1007, 1017, 1018
Grundig 1006 ,1007
Hanseatic 1005, 1006, 1018
Harwood 1017
HCM 1007, 1017
Hinari 1002, 1007, 1017, 1018
Hisawa 1002
Hitachi 1000, 1001, 1006, 1012
Hypson 1002, 1007, 1017, 1018
Impego 1004
Imperial 1000
Inno Hit 1003, 1004, 1006, 1007, 1017, 1018
Innovation 1002
Interbuy 1005, 1017
Interfunk 1006
Intervision 1000, 1018
Irradio 1005, 1007, 1017
ITT 1001
ITV 1003, 1005, 1018
JVC 1001, 1013
Kaisui 1007, 1017
Karcher 1006
Kendo 1002, 1003, 1004, 1017
Korpel 1007, 1017
Kyoto 1017
Lenco 1003
Leyco 1007, 1017
LG 1000, 1005, 1016
Lifetec 1002
Loewe Opta 1005, 1006
Logik 1007, 1017
Lumatron 1003, 1018
Luxor 1017
M Electronic 1000
Manesth 1007, 1017
Marantz 1006
Mark 1018
Matsui 1002, 1005
Matsushita 1000, 1006
Mediator 1006
Medion 1002
Memorex 1000, 1005
Memphis 1007, 1017
Micromaxx 1002
Microstar 1002
Migros 1000
Multitech 1000, 1004, 1006, 1007, 1017
Murphy 1000
NEC 1001
Neckermann 1001, 1006
NEI 1006
Nesco 1007, 1017
Nikkai 1004, 1017, 1018
Nokia 1001, 1018
Nordmende 1001
Oceanic 1000, 1001
Okano 1002, 1017, 1018
Orion 1002
Orson 1000
Osaki 1000, 1005, 1007, 1017
Otto Versand 1006
Palladium 1001, 1005, 1007, 1017
Panasonic 1010
Pathe Marconi 1001
Perdio 1000
Philco 1017
Philips 1006, 1012, 1019
Phonola 1006
Portland 1003, 1004, 1018
Prinz 1000
Profex 1007
Proline 1000
Prosonic 1002, 1018
Pye 1006
Quelle 1000, 1006
Radialva 1017
Radiola 1006
Rex 1001
RFT 1004, 1006, 1017
Roadstar 1003, 1005, 1007, 1017, 1018
Royal 1017
Saba 1001
Saisho 1002, 1007
Samsung 1008
Samurai 1004, 1017
Sansui 1001
Saville 1018
SBR 1006
Schaub Lorenz 1000, 1001
Schneider 1000, 1002, 1003, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1017, 1018
SEG 1007, 1017, 1018
SEI-Sinudyne 1006
Seleco 1001
Sentra 1004, 1017
Sentron 1007, 1017
Sharp 1009
Shintom 1007, 1017
Shivaki 1005
Siemens 1005
Silva 1005
Silver 1018
Sinudyne 1006
Solavox 1004
Sonneclair 1017
Sonoko 1003, 1018
Sontec 1005
Sony 1011
Standard 1003, 1018
Stern 1018
Sunkai 1002
Sunstar 1000
Suntronic 1000
Sunwood 1007, 1017
Symphonic 1017
Taisho 1002
Tandberg 1018
Tashiko 1000
Tatung 1000, 1001, 1006
TCM 1002
Teac 1018
Tec 1004, 1017, 1018
Teleavia 1001
Telefunken 1001
Teletech 1017, 1018
Tenosal 1007, 1017
Tensai 1000, 1005, 1007, 1017
Tevion 1002
Thomson 1001, 1015
Thorn 1001
Tokai 1005, 1007, 1017
Tonsai 1007
Toshiba 1001, 1006, 1014
Towada 1007, 1017
Towika 1007, 1017
TVA 1004
Uher 1005
Ultravox 1018
United Quick Star 1003, 1018
Universum 1000, 1005, 1006
Videon 1002
Weltblick 1005
Yamishi 1007, 1017
Yokan 1007, 1017
Yoko 1004, 1005, 1007, 1017

Satellite Set Top Box

Pioneer 6096, 6095, 6080, 6176, 0196
@sat 6127
@Sky 6114
ABsat 6056
Acoustic Solutions 6093
ADB 6050
Akai 6090
Akura 6104
Alba 6052, 6076, 6056, 6093
Allsat 6090
Alltech 6056
Allvision 6128, 6114, 6075
Amitronica 6056
Ampere 6132, 6137
Amstrad 6132, 6137, 6112, 6056, 6078, 6119
Anglo 6056
Ankaro 6056
Ansonic 6121
Anttron 6076
Apollo 6052
Apro 6108
Arcon 6068
Arcus 6069
Armstrong 6090
Arnion 6127
ASA 6106
Asat 6090
ASCI 6089, 6114
ASLF 6056
AssCom 6096
Astra 6131, 6056
Astratec 6144, 6145
Astrell 6078
Astro 6053, 6112, 6131, 6076, 6122, 6091, 6098, 6119
Atlanta 6121
Atsat 6127
AtSky 6114
Audioline 6108
Audioton 6076
Austar 6050
Avalon 6137
Axil 6120, 6062, 6121
Axis 6143
Axitronic 6104
B.net 6108
B@ytronic 6106, 6075
BELL 6191
Balmet 6062
Beko 6052
Belson 6121
Big Sat 6062
Black Diamond 6093
Blaupunkt 6053
Blue Sky 6056
Boca 6132, 6056, 6128, 6061, 6133, 6113, 6063, 6064
Bodner & Mann 6070
Boshmann 6120, 6123
Boston 6103
Brainwave 6107, 6108
British Sky Broadcasting 6086
Broco 6056
BskyB 6086
BT 6071
Bubu Sat 6056
Bush 6130, 6093, 6140, 6104, 6108, 6144, 6077, 6066, 6141, 6058
Cambridge 6112
Canal Digital 6096
Canal Satellite 6096, 6095, 6154, 6153
Canal+ 6096, 6153
CGV 6120, 6059
Cherokee 6070
Chess 6089, 6056, 6114, 6104
CityCom 6105, 6131, 6128, 6055, 6068, 6117
Clark 6076
Classic 6108
Clatronic 6120
Clayton 6104
Clemens Kamphus 6137
Cobra 6137
Colombia 6132
Columbia 6132
Comag 6132, 6128, 6061, 6075, 6120, 6133, 6113, 6065, 6135, 6063, 6064
Comsat 6120
Condor 6131, 6129
Connexions 6137
Conrad 6132, 6112, 6083, 6131
Coship 6062, 6108
Crown 6093
Cryptovision 6052
CS 6123
Cyfrowy Polsat 6096
Cyrus 6090
D-box 6151
Daewoo 6143, 6056, 6071, 6144, 6058
Dantax 6104
Deltasat 6068
Denver 6121
Digatron 6107
Digenius 6105, 6102
Digiality 6131, 6114
Digifusion 6144, 6145
Digihome 6093, 6141, 6094
DigiLogic 6093
DigiQuest 6127, 6062, 6123
DigiSat 6128
Digisky 6062
Digital 6063
Digital Vision 6145
DigitalBox 6098, 6123
Dijam 6071
DirecTV 6139
Discovery 6070
Distratel 6078, 6126
DMT 6068
DNT 6090, 6137
Doro 6108
Dual 6128
Durabrand 6093, 6094
DX Antenna 6171
E Aichi 6172
Echolink 6061
Echostar 6096, 6057, 6115, 6109, 6137, 6052, 6056, 6177
Edision 6123
Einhell 6132, 6112, 6056
Elap 6056, 6120, 6059
Elbe 6121
Elless 6106
Elsat 6056
Elta 6090
eMTech 6072
Energy Sistem 6123
Engel 6056, 6103
EP Sat 6052
Eurieult 6078
Eurocrypt 6052
EuroLine 6103
Europa 6112, 6131
Europhon 6132, 6105, 6131
Eurosat 6065
Eurosky 6132, 6089, 6105, 6112, 6131, 6106
Eurostar 6131, 6055
Eutelsat 6056
Eutra 6106
Evesham 6094
Exator 6076
Fagor 6079
Fenner 6056
Ferguson 6052, 6140, 6144, 6145
Fidelity 6112
Finlandia 6052
Finlux 6052, 6083, 6104
FinnSat 6106
Flair Mate 6056
Fly Com 6062
FMD 6089, 6120, 6062

Freecom 6112
FTEmaximal 6056, 6065
Fuba 6053, 6105, 6137, 6083, 6102, 6072
Fujitsu 6164, 6165, 6166
Galaxis 6096, 6143
Gardiner 6055
Garnet 6068
GbSAT 6072
Gecco 6122, 6075
General Satellite 6117
Globo 6106, 6103, 6114, 6075, 6133
GOD Digital 6090
Gold Box 6096, 6095
Gold Vision 6123
Golden Interstar 6126
Goodmans 6052, 6130, 6093, 6140, 6147, 6066, 6094, 6077
Gran Prix 6106
Granada 6052
Grandin 6104
Grocos 6115, 6062
Grundig 6108, 6096, 6053, 6093, 6140, 6094, 6077, 6066
Haensel & Gretel 6132
Haier 6121
Hama 6059
Hanseatic 6091, 6098
Hauppauge 6107, 6108
HB 6072
Heliocom 6131
Helium 6131
Hiro 6065
Hirschmann 6143, 6053, 6105, 6137, 6112, 6083, 6131, 6106, 6128, 6075, 6065
Hitachi 6052, 6094, 6093, 6163
HNE 6132
Hornet 6127
Houston 6137
Humax 6117, 6118, 6144
Huth 6132, 6131, 6068, 6069
Hyundai 6068
ID Digital 6117
ILLUSION sat 6123
Imperial 6098, 6092, 6099, 6114, 6108
Ingelen 6089, 6137
Inno Hit 6104
International 6132
Interstar 6072
Intervision 6131
Inves 6144
iotronic 6120
ITT Nokia 6083, 6052
Jaeger 6114
JERROLD 6159, 6180, 6181, 6182, 6183, 6184, 6185, 6186, 6187, 6188
K-SAT 6056
Kamm 6056
Kaon 6127
KaTelco 6143
Kathrein 6053, 6090, 6089, 6055, 6138, 6076, 6148, 6059, 6056
Kendo 6128
Kenwood 6096
Key West 6132
Kiton 6089
KR 6076
Kreiling 6089, 6104, 6070
Kreiselmeyer 6053
Kyostar 6076
L&S Electronic 6132, 6114
Labgear 6071
LaSAT 6053, 6132, 6105, 6131, 6106
Leiko 6104
Lemon 6114
Lenco 6131, 6056
Lenson 6112
LG 6068
Lifesat 6132, 6105, 6056
Listo 6104
Lodos 6093
Logik 6093
Logix 6068
Lorenzen 6132, 6105, 6131, 6102, 6107, 6133, 6113
Luxor 6112, 6083, 6141
M Electronic 6055
Manata 6132, 6056
Manhattan 6052, 6127
Marantz 6090
Maspro 6053, 6056
Matsui 6053, 6093, 6147, 6104, 6144, 6145
Max 6131
Maximum 6068, 6114
Mediabox 6096, 6095
Mediacom 6074
MediaSat 6096, 6095, 6112, 6154, 6153
Medion 6132, 6105, 6056, 6106, 6068, 6128, 6114, 6075, 6104
Medison 6056
Mega 6090
MegaSat 6065
Metronic 6132, 6076, 6056, 6055, 6078, 6126, 6114, 6120
Metz 6053
Micro 6112, 6131, 6076, 6056, 6107
Micro Elektronic 6056
Micro Technology 6056
Micromaxx 6105
Microstar 6105, 6068, 6102
Microtec 6056
Mitsubishi 6052
Morgan's 6090, 6132, 6056, 6128, 6075
Multibroadcast 6050
Multichoice 6050
Myryad 6090
Mysat 6056
MySky 6087, 6088
NEC 6162
NEOTION 6114
Netsat 6139
Neuhaus 6112, 6131, 6056
Neuling 6132, 6128, 6133, 6064
Neusat 6056
Neveling 6102
Newton 6137
NextWave 6069
Nichimen 6130
Nikko 6056, 6090
Noda Electronic 6078
Nokia 6052, 6083, 6096, 6082
Nordmende 6052
Octagon 6076
OctalTV 6107
Onn 6093, 6094
Opentel 6128, 6075
Optex 6089, 6056, 6126, 6120, 6079, 6104
Orbis 6128, 6114, 6075
Orbitech 6089, 6112, 6091, 6098, 6092, 6099
P/Sat 6128
Pace 6149, 6096, 6090, 6088, 6087, 6057, 6052
Pacific 6093
Packard Bell 6143
Palcom 6105, 6102, 6115
Palladium 6137, 6112
Palsat 6112
Panasonic 6054, 6052, 6167, 6168, 6169
Panda 6053, 6052, 6131
Pansat 6067
Pass 6059
Patriot 6132
peeKTon 6062, 6121
Philips 6096, 6053, 6090, 6151, 6095, 6139, 6153, 6144, 6108, 6055, 6076, 6052
Phoenix 6121
Phonotrend 6109
Pilotime 6154
Pino 6114
Pixx 6067
Planet 6137
PMB 6056, 6079
Polytron 6137
Portland 6071
Preisner 6132, 6137, 6119, 6061
Premier 6095
Primacom 6143
Primestar 6178
Pro Basic 6096, 6060
Proline 6093
Promax 6052
Proscan 6110
Quelle 6105, 6131
Radiola 6090
Radix 6137, 6119
Rainbow 6076
RCA 6110, 6173, 6175, 6179
Rebox 6072
Regal 6103
RFT 6090
Roadstar 6096, 6056
Rollmaster 6120
Rover 6056
Rownsonic 6059
SA 6155, 6157, 6189, 6190
SAB 6103, 6127
Saba 6060, 6131, 6106, 6078
Sabre 6052
Sagem 6151, 6134, 6153
Saivod 6121
Salora 6128
Samsung 6096, 6074, 6073, 6149, 6129
Sanyo 6104
SAT 6112
Sat Control 6127
Sat Partner 6112, 6076
Sat Team 6056
SAT+ 6115
Satcom 6131
Satec 6056
Satelco 6128
Satplus 6098
SatyCon 6123
Schaecke 6076
Schaub Lorenz 6072, 6121
Schneider 6074, 6103
Schwaiger 6143, 6132, 6138, 6131, 6106, 6078, 6068, 6114, 6075, 6064, 6062, 6133, 6123, 6108, 6063
Scientific Atlanta 6085
SCS 6105, 6106
Sedea Electronique 6132, 6089, 6074, 6126, 6104
Seemann 6137
SEG 6089, 6068, 6103, 6093, 6104
SEI 6170
Septimo 6078
Serd 6075
Servimat 6079
ServiSat 6056, 6103
Shark 6123
Sharp 6141, 6094
Siemens 6053, 6137, 6114
Sigmatek 6121
Silva 6105
SilverCrest 6135, 6063
Skantin 6056
SKR 6056
SKT 6132
SKY 6139, 6086, 6088, 6087
SKY Italia 6096, 6088
Sky XL 6103, 6075
Skymaster 6109, 6056, 6068, 6114, 6115, 6060, 6059, 6079
Skymax 6090, 6120
Skypex 6106
Skyplus 6075, 6106, 6128, 6114
SkySat 6089, 6112, 6131, 6056
Skyvision 6114
SL 6132, 6105, 6106, 6107, 6133, 6108
SM Electronic 6109, 6056, 6115
Smart 6132, 6137, 6056, 6119, 6128, 6122, 6123, 6120, 6133
SmartVision 6062
Sony 6111, 6096, 6095, 6052, 6174
SR 6132
Star Sat 6072
Starland 6056
Starlite 6090
Stream 6088
Stream System 6127
Strong 6096, 6121, 6132, 6076, 6056, 6104, 6093, 6115
Sumin 6075
Sunny 6127
Sunsat 6056
Sunstar 6050, 6132
SuperMax 6069
Supratech 6120
Systec 6114
Tantec 6052
Targa 6067
Tatung 6052
TBoston 6103, 6121
Tecatel 6109
Technical 6104
Technika 6093, 6108, 6094
TechniSat 6089, 6137, 6052, 6112, 6091, 6098, 6092, 6099
Technomate 6126
Technosat 6069
Technosonic 6130, 6108
Technotrend 6108
Technowelt 6132, 6131
Techwood 6089, 6093, 6104, 6094
Telasat 6131
TELE System 6137, 6079, 6103, 6115
Teleciel 6076
Teleka 6137, 6112, 6131, 6076
Telesat 6131
Telestar 6089, 6112, 6091, 6098, 6092, 6099, 6103, 6114, 6108, 6104
Teletech 6089
Televes 6132, 6052, 6112, 6072, 6127, 6114, 6133
Telewire 6128
Tempo 6069
Tevion 6130, 6056, 6115, 6108, 6060
Thomson 6110, 6096, 6086, 6088, 6095, 6056, 6131, 6052, 6141, 6153, 6140
Thorn 6052
Tiny 6108
Tioko 6132
Titan 6065, 6060
TNT SAT 6134
Tokai 6090
Tonna 6052, 6112, 6056, 6079
Topfield 6074
Toshiba 6052, 6093, 6161
Trevi 6103
Triasat 6112
Triax 6096, 6090, 6132, 6135, 6065, 6129, 6104, 6079, 6137, 6089, 6133, 6120, 6071, 6140, 6103, 6119, 6056, 6112
Turnsat 6056
Twinner 6056, 6079
Unisat 6090, 6132
United 6103
Univers 6065

Universum 6053, 6089, 6105, 6131, 6106, 6091, 6103
Van Hunen 6102
Variosat 6053
VEA 6121
Ventana 6090
Vestel 6089, 6103, 6093, 6094
VH Sat 6105
Viasat 6149
Viola Digital 6108
Vision 6104, 6065
Visionic 6126
Visiosat 6089, 6130, 6056, 6120, 6062, 6067
Vitecom 6120
Volcasat 6121
VTech 6055
Wetekom 6112
Wewa 6052
Wharfedale 6093, 6141, 6094
Wisi 6053, 6132, 6105, 6137, 6052, 6112, 6131, 6106, 6128, 6075
Worldsat 6089, 6072, 6103, 6070
WorthIt! 6066
Woxter 6121
Xoro 6067
Xsat 6057, 6056, 6072
Xtreme 6127
Yakumo 6120
ZapMaster 6106
Zehnder 6089, 6138, 6055, 6068, 6128, 6103, 6114, 6075, 6120, 6123, 6125
ZENITH 6156, 6158, 6160
Zeta Technology 6090
Zodiac 6137, 6076

Satellite Set Top Box (SAT/PVR Combination)

@sat 6127
Allvision 6075
Atsat 6127
B@ytronic 6106, 6075
Boca 6063
BskyB 6086
Bush 6130
Canal Satellite 6154
Comag 6075, 6063
Daewoo 6058
Digifusion 6145
Digihome 6094
DigiQuest 6127
Digital 6063
DMT 6068
Edision 6123
eMTech 6072
GbSAT 6072
Gecco 6075
Globo 6075
Goodmans 6130, 6094
Hirschmann 6106, 6075
Humax 6117, 6118
Huth 6068
Hyundai 6068
Kathrein 6148
LaSAT 6106
LG 6068
Luxor 6141
Maximum 6114
Mediacom 6074
MediaSat 6153
Medion 6106, 6075
Microstar 6068
Morgan's 6075
MySky 6087, 6088
NEOTION 6114
Nichimen 6130
Nokia 6082
Opentel 6075
Orbis 6075
Pace 6087, 6149
Panasonic 6054
Philips 6139, 6153
Pilotime 6154
Pixx 6067
Proscan 6110
Rebox 6072
Sagem 6134
Samsung 6149, 6074, 6073
Sat Control 6127
Schneider 6074
Schwaiger 6106, 6068, 6075, 6063
Sedea Electronique 6074
Serd 6075
Sharp 6094
SilverCrest 6063
SKY 6086, 6088, 6087
SKY Italia 6088
Sky XL 6075
Skymaster 6068
Skypex 6106
Skyplus 6075, 6106, 6114
Stream System 6127
Sumin 6075
Sunny 6127
Targa 6067
TechniSat 6092, 6099
Technosonic 6130
Telestar 6092, 6099
Thomson 6086, 6141
TNT SAT 6134
Topfield 6074
Viasat 6149
Visiosat 6130, 6067
Wisi 6106
Xoro 6067
Xtreme 6127
Zehnder 6068, 6075, 6125

Cable Set Top Box

Pioneer 0197, 6081
ABC 6142
ADB 6051
Auna 6051
Austar 6152
Bell & Howell 6142
Birmingham Cable Communications 6152
Cablecom 6146
Fosgate 6152
France Telecom 6136
Freebox 6150
General Instrument 6152, 6142
Humax 6100, 6124
Jerrold 6152, 6142
Kabel Deutschland 6100
Macab 6136
Madritel 6051
Magnavox 6142
Memorex 6116
Motorola 6152
Nokia 6084
Noos 6136
NTL 6152, 6097
Optus 6152
Orange 6136
Pace 6097
Panasonic 6116
Paragon 6116
Philips 6136, 6146
Pulsar 6116
Runco 6116
Sagem 6136
Salora 6116
Samsung 6097, 6116
Scientific Atlanta 6101
StarHub 6152
Supercable 6152
Telewest 6101
Thomson 6146, 6100
Toshiba 6116
UPC 6146
US Electronics 6152
Virgin Media 6097, 6101
Visiopass 6136
Zenith 6116
Ziggo 6084

Cable Set Top Box (Cable/PVR Combination)

Freebox 6150
Humax 6124, 6100
Nokia 6084
Scientific Atlanta 6101
Telewest 6101
Thomson 6146
UPC 6146
Virgin Media 6101

CD (SACD)

Pioneer 5065, 5066
AKAI 5043
Asuka 5045
Denon 5019
Fisher 5048
Goldstar 5040
Hitachi 5042
Kenwood 5020, 5021, 5031
Luxman 5049
Marantz 5033
Onkyo 5017, 5018, 5030, 5050
Panasonic 5036
Philips 5022, 5032, 5044
RCA 5013, 5029
Roadstar 5052
Sharp 5051
Sony 5012, 5023, 5026, 5027, 5028, 5039
TEAC 5015, 5016, 5034, 5035, 5037
Technics 5041
Victor 5014
Yamaha 5024, 5025, 5038, 5046, 5047

CD-R

Pioneer 5067
Philips 5054
Yamaha 5055

Laser Disc Player

Pioneer 5062, 5063

Cassete Deck

Pioneer 5070

Digital Tape

Pioneer 5069

MD

Pioneer 5068

Discover the benefits of registering your product online at **http://www.pioneer.co.uk** (or **http://www.pioneer.eu**).

PIONEER CORPORATION
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi, Kanagawa 212-0031, Japan
PIONEER ELECTRONICS (USA) INC.
P.O. BOX 1540, Long Beach, California 90801-1540, U.S.A. TEL: (800) 421-1404
PIONEER ELECTRONICS OF CANADA, INC.
340 Ferrier Street, Unit 2, Markham, Ontario L3R 2Z5, Canada TEL: 1-877-283-5901, 905-479-4411
PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1, B-9120 Melsele, Belgium TEL: 03/570.05.11
PIONEER ELECTRONICS ASIACENTRE PTE. LTD.
253 Alexandra Road, #04-01, Singapore 159936 TEL: 65-6472-7555
PIONEER ELECTRONICS AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.
5 Arco Lane, Heatherton, Victoria, 3202, Australia, TEL: (03) 9586-6300
PIONEER ELECTRONICS DE MEXICO S.A. DE C.V.
Blvd.Manuel Avila Camacho 138 10 piso Col.Lomas de Chapultepec, Mexico, D.F. 11000 TEL: 55-9178-4270
K002_B3_En

© 2011 PIONEER CORPORATION.
All rights reserved.

<6517-00000-015-0S>